



\$B 257 386

M. O'Connell

John O'Connell

M. O'Connell

John O'Connell

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

ELEGANTIÆ LATINÆ;

OR,

RULES & EXERCISES

ILLUSTRATIVE OF

Elegant Latin Styles

INTENDED FOR THE

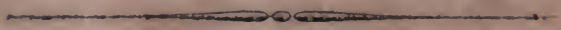
USE OF THE MIDDLE AND HIGHER CLASSES OF

GRAMMAR SCHOOLS.



Ipse Oratio conformanda non solum electione, sed etiam constructione Verborum. — Cic.

FROM THE FIFTH ENGLISH EDITION.



NEW-HAVEN:
HOWE & SPALDING PUBLISHERS.

.....
S. CONVERSE, PRINTER.
1819.

PA 2075

V34

1819

MAIN

24903

PREFACE.

DURING the many years, in which I have been engaged in the arduous but important task of teaching the Classics, it has never failed to excite my wonder and concern, that in the many attempts, which have been made to smooth the difficulties, with which the road to classical excellence is attended, no method tending to facilitate Latin composition, has been successively pursued from the first introduction of a Youth into the Elementary Exercises, to his arrival into the flowery fields of correct elegance and dignity of style. The greatest care is usually taken in conducting him to a certain point: when he understands the plain application of his rules of Syntax, he is then thrown upon the wide world of elegant Latinity, in which the range he is to take, though stripped of the thorns of grammatical analysis, is still very precarious; his progress is still *ascensu difficilis*. For unless the Master is at liberty to point out very minutely the particular words or arrangement of words which constitute elegance, he must greatly depend upon his own judgment and observation for the knowledge of them. And there is as great a difference between the mere grammatical structure of a sentence, and the elegant usage and collocation of words, as between the rude sketch of an imperfect outline, and the fine colouring of a finished painting.

Numerous are the books, both in this and other countries, which have been published upon the elegance of Latin style. But none do I know at all calculated to be put into the hands of Youth. Philologists have displayed much critical knowledge in their learned dissertations upon the style and the beauties of the Latin Language. But that knowledge and those researches were neither intended, nor calculated to be useful to young beginners. A pleasant little book. (*Les Deli-*

res de la Langue Latine,) was published many years ago, and in imitation of it, or rather compiled from it, appeared one or two in this country by De-Burcy and others. But beside their incorrectness, and too great conciseness, their idutility will immediately appear, when it is considered that the Examples, being all in Latin, and that not of the purest, can neither exercise the labour nor excite the industry of the scholar. This observation may be applied, with equal propriety, to Walker's Phrases, and especially to Willymott's Particles, which, though very useful and valuable, give the Latin of the English idiom, and thus preclude the necessity of research; and as they give no general rules for the use or the application of them, the advantage which the Scholar is to derive from them, must rest wholly upon his memory and mechanical retention.

The perusal of Scheller's valuable work upon the elegance of Latin style, first suggested the idea that something might be attempted, which, with care and attention, might be adapted to the use of our Classical Schools. Heineccius, though so severely lashed by his countryman, contains much sterling sense, and was also instrumental both in the determination and the execution of this work. With what degree of accuracy and judgment it has been performed, it now rests with the public to determine. If I have been mistaken in some points, I shall hope to have the error candidly pointed out: "*Nihil enim mihi suavius est, quàm corrigi; omnis enim correctio, à magnis viris profecta, est via ad discendum; nec is ego profectò sum qui vituperari nolim, modò vituperatio sit justa.*"

Perhaps some of the practical observations, those that relate to the structure of the Period, for instance, may at first appear intricate, and not so necessary as others. To a young beginner, they might perhaps appear so. It would be as difficult a task, and might retard him as much in his acquisition

of a pure Latin style, if he bestowed too minute a labour upon them ; as if he attempted to collect the scattered limbs of the dissected Absyrtus. But as it is presumed the Scholar has already made some progress in Latin, before he is introduced to these Exercises, the study of those rules, as the knowledge of anatomy to a proficient in surgery, which makes him admire the more the wonderful structure of the body, will make the proficient Scholar see and taste the beauty and order of the style the more, from the dissection of the several parts. Some rules, especially those that relate to the use of *qui, quæ, quod*, may carry the appearance of repetition ; but as they come in illustration of different heads, they only tend to show in how extensive and various a manner the same may be used. It may likewise be observed, that the particular method which the rule points out, is not always more elegant than another ; but it is often merely to show the variation and the manner in which one phrase or expression may be changed into another.

EDWARD VALPY.

Advertisement

TO THE THIRD EDITION.

IT has been my principal care to simplify, or wholly to remove from this edition, those difficult passages, which, notwithstanding the general approbation with which this work has been received, must be acknowledged to have existed in the former editions. When therefore the Scholar is first introduced into this book of exercises, he should be allowed to omit the sentences, which are marked with an asterisk, and confine himself to the easier examples. The second time he travels over the same field, he will be equal to the more difficult passages, to which the asterisk is prefixed, and to the whole range of Latin composition. When a boy has gone through these exercises a second time, he may be safely presumed to have made no small proficiency in writing Latin. I have witnessed the most pleasing proofs of this assertion. It is presumed that this edition embraces every thing within the scope of research, which was likely to contribute to the elegant formation of style, every thing by which a sentence *spargatur, irrigetur, perfundatur*. As the rules for the structure of a regular Period, which is so essential to good Latinity, could not be so easily reduced to practical illustration, an acquaintance with them will chiefly rest upon the scholar's own study and observation, aided by the master's direction and superintendence; but a close examination of the rules and the few examples which accompany them, will be sufficient to imprint them on his mind.

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

OF the choice and elegance of particular words,	Page 1
Rules for the pronoun <i>qui, quæ, quod</i> , and other relatives,	28
Of Verbs,	47
Of Participles,	60
Of Tenses,	73
Of the succession of Tenses,	78

CHAP. II.

Of the order or arrangement of words,	87
Of the arrangement of words, as they depend upon the natural order of ideas,	106
Of the arrangement of clauses, or different members of a sentence,	117

CHAP. III.

Of Conjunctions, and the mode of connecting words and clauses,	127
--	-----

CHAP. IV.

Of the simple variation of words,	144
-----------------------------------	-----

CHAP. V.

Copiousness of Style,	169
Pleonasm,	190
Dignity or strength of Style,	196

CHAP. VI.

Of the structure of a period,	204
Of Prose-measure or Harmony,	215

CHAP. VII.

Of Perspicuity,	221
Of the structure of Themes,	227

ELEGANTIAE LINGVAE

LIBER I

De Grammatica et Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

De Poetica

De Grammatica

ELEGANTIÆ LATINÆ

CHAPTER I.

Of the Choice and Elegance of Particular Words.

Quinam igitur dicendi est modus melior, quàm ut Latinè, ut planè, ut ornate, ut ad id, quodcunque agetur, aptè congruenterque dicamus.

Cicero.

ELEGANCE, according to the derivation of the word, *eligere*, consists in the choice of the most appropriate words and expressions, and in their composition and clear and perspicuous order. It depends chiefly on the usage of the best Latin writers. When therefore the scholar has selected those words, which are appropriate in their meaning to the sense of the subject, the next thing will be to consider whether they have been used by the best writers of antiquity.

But let it be premised, that no word can be elegant or beautiful in itself, in its disjoined state, but merely as far as it strengthens, connects, or illustrates the subject ; or at least as far as the Latin word conveys in its true meaning the full force of the English expression. It would be absurd, therefore, to use at random the first word which presents itself, without considering whether it is appropriate to the sense : as in say-

ing that “the good man is cheerful and *resigned* at the hour of death; though *traditus* signifies *resigned*, that is, *delivered up*, it does by no means express the English meaning; and therefore it would be necessary to search till a proper word offers itself for *resigned*, in the sense which it bears in this sentence, which is, *tranquil* or *contented*.

In investigating then the true and proper signification of words, it will be necessary to understand each different sense in which they are used; and if the scholar acquaint himself as much as he can with their etymology and original meaning, he will be enabled to write purer Latin, and to avoid many Grecisms, obsolete and barbarous words, and those which have too great an affinity to the English, introduced into use by several modern and inelegant writers, as *recommendare* to *recommend*, &c.

If the Latin should not furnish a word sufficiently elegant, or fully expressive of the English idea, or if the force or dignity of the subject require it, it may be necessary to vary an expression by means of a short periphrasis, or of a phrase, instead of a simple word. But in the choice of phrases, care must be taken that they do not convey more meaning than we wish to express. Thus, in saying that mothers embrace their infants, though *ruere in amplexum* is sometimes a very good phrase for *amplecti*, yet who would say, *matres solent in amplexum infantium ruere*, when the simple word expresses the idea so much better? And though *inflammatum esse*

irā is often used for *irasci*, yet it implies much more ; and it would be absurd to say *scripsit ei pater paulūm irā inflammatus*, for *paulò iratior*, rather angry. In short, the sense or the context must be considered very minutely and accurately, before the scholar is enabled to judge of the propriety or the elegance of the corresponding expressions. Again, though *utor* is sometimes elegantly used for the verb *habeo*, yet in its meaning it must include the *use* as well as the *possession* of any thing. We would not say therefore *avarus utitur magnis opibus*, if we wished merely to say *avarus habet magnas opes*. These few preliminary observations will be sufficient to show the necessity of selecting such Latin words and expressions, as convey in their full force and meaning, the true sense of the English.

Nothing indeed will be more conducive to the purity and elegance of the Latin language, than a happy contexture of elegant Roman phrases, or forms of speaking, used by the best and purest writers. With these, therefore, the learner should be directed to store his memory, and be taught how to use them in his own composition. For effecting this essential purpose, which certainly requires time, diligence, and observation, it would be necessary that the scholar should write down daily whatever Latin phrase and elegant form of speaking he may occasionally meet with in his lessons, and give a weekly account of them to the master. That excellent little book, Valpy's Dialogues, should also be put early into his hands : these should be thoroughly

learnt, and well impressed on the memory, as the phrases and forms of speech are collected from the purest writers.

It will also be necessary to observe that there are many peculiar modes of expression, or idioms in the English, which can only be rendered by adopting some Latin phrase, or using such a variation as will best suit the Latin style. These will be gradually exemplified as the scholar proceeds through these rules and exercises. For instance—

Send me word by letter :

To use a literal or rather barbarous expression, we should say, *mitte mihi verbum* : to speak true or elegant Latin, we should say, *fac me per literas certiores*.

I am short of money :

Barbarously or literally, *brevis sum pecuniæ* ; elegantly, *deficit me pecunia*.

I would be loth to make thee to be beaten :

I will make them friends :

He made as though he wept :

Such expressions on the first view carry with them the appearance of English idioms. It would be therefore absurd carelessly to say *essem invitus facere te rapulare*, &c. but with a little care and judgment, and by considering their real meaning, it will be easy to give them a turn which may answer that meaning, and to find out a corresponding Latin expression. Thus we shall say :

I would be loth to make thee be beaten : non lubens committerem ut rapulares, that is, I would not willingly give cause that

I will make them friends : redigam eos in gratiam.

He made as though he wept : simulavit quasi fleret, or, se flere.

And so on of phrases in general : Thus again, *I will make good, that is, supply, supplebo.*

He made much of me, i. e. he treated me well, comiter me tractavit.

He makes much of himself, i. e. he indulges himself, sibi, or genio indulget.

You make game of me, i. e. you laugh at me, ludis me, or ludibrio me habes.

You can do much with him, tu multum apud eum potes.

You know what account I make of him, i. e. esteem him, scis quanti eum faciam.

I'll have nothing to do with your friendship, i. e. I renounce . . . renuncio tuæ amicitiae.

I have my brother to entreat, i. e. my brother remains to be entreated, restat mihi frater adhuc exorandus.

Thou mayst for all me, licet tibi per me.

Thou mayst be gone for all me, licet abeas per me.

To be spoken of, audire.

What trade are you of? i. e. do you pursue? Quam artem facitis?

To ask the advice of any one, i. e. to consult; consulere.

You are sure to be punished, i. e. a certain punishment awaits you, certa pœna te manet.

Be ruled by me, i. e. listen to me, ausculta mihi.

I am not in fault, i. e. blameable, or I am free from fault, vaco culpâ.

Let him lose, be made to go without, his supper, multetur cænâ.

To be sick of a disease, fever, want, i. e. to labor under...laborare morbo, &c.

Besides a great number of phrases, which are derived from the particular forms and customs of the Romans, and which a more intimate acquaintance with Latin authors, will soon render familiar to the scholar: *as, to sell by auction, hastæ subjicere; with good or ill luck, bonis aut malis avibus; to marry, ducere uxorem, &c.*

And so on of phrases in general: This shows at the same time the absolute necessity of attending more to the sense than the words, and of suiting the expressions accordingly.

Many English sentences may appear very difficult and intricate, and sometimes at first sight scarcely susceptible of being converted into elegant and appropriate Latin. These sentences, the scholar should be directed to read repeatedly till he understands perfectly their sense and meaning. His first business will be then, to simplify, so as to reduce them to their bare and original idea, divesting them of every superfluous word and idiomatic expression: and he should not begin to write any part of the sentence, till he has furnished himself with the Latin corresponding to the chief heads of it: for his first attempt will not always embrace the full scope and purport of its meaning, and it may be necessary to vary his sentence and give it a new and different

turn, by the change of active into passive, or passive into active, &c. and then it will be easy to give it a fuller dress, and so to connect it by the addition of any suitable and necessary words, as may give to the whole, a force, equal to that of the English.

For instance: let us examine this sentence, as it is translated from Cicero, which at first sight appears very difficult, and which, if it could be turned into literal Latin, would be unsufferable to the ear. “But nothing,” says he, “seems to me of superior excellence, than for a speaker to have that irresistible hold upon the assemblies of men, as by the charms of his eloquence, to bend their minds to his own purposes, to lead them to whatever direction he chuses, or dissuade them at pleasure from whatever object they may have in view.” As soon as the scholar begins to dissect this sentence, and reduce some of the expressions to their simple idea. he will find that it will soon admit of a plain, easy, and at the same time an elegant dress. Thus, “of superior excellence” is a common English turn for the bare comparative, more excellent, *præstabilius*, “for a speaker to have an irresistible hold,” is so perfectly English, that a literal translation would not be Latin, and means nothing more than “by speaking to hold,” *dicendo tenere*; “to bend their minds to his own purposes” is simply *mentes allicere*, “to his own purposes” being a mere English redundancy, wholly unnecessary in Latin; “to whatever direction he pleases,” is evidently another turn peculiar to the English, which is fully comprehended in this plain expression, *Quò velit*; “dissuade

them at pleasure from whatever object they may have in view," is equally an English turn of expression, the meaning of which is fully included in these few words, *unde velit deducere*: The whole sentence being thus simplified, will now appear plain and easy, and will quickly assume an elegant and Ciceronian dress. "*Necque verò mihi quidquam, inquit, præstabilius videtur, quàm posse dicendo tenere hominum cœtus, mentes allicere, impellere quò velit, unde autem velit, deducere.*"

And as the young Latin writer is apt to follow too closely the literal order of the English, it may be necessary to guard him against this common error, by the following observation, which, tho' coming more properly under the head of the order and arrangement of words, may be introduced in this place, as being applicable to almost every example in this book. It is the genius of the Latin language, that the order and position of words, are not bound by so strict and immutable laws as in other languages, though certain rules must be followed, and such an arrangement preserved, that the style may not be confused, puerile, and inelegant. Seldom therefore does the nominative case come first in the sentence; but other cases, unless the sense and perspicuity absolutely require it, are generally placed before it.

EXAMPLES.

1. C. Julius far surpassed all his elders and contemporaries in *pleasantry and facetiousness*, and though he was not a vehement and impetuous orator, yet no man's speeches were ever more seasoned with urbanity, wit, and elegance. (Begin with the ablatives and then the nominative.)

2. Those men appear to me very fortunate indeed, while I revolve in my mind, and retrace in my memory, the annals of our ancestors, who in a well constituted republic, after having arrived at the summit of glory and honors, could follow such a mode of life, as to be able to pursue their high employments without danger, or live in ease and retirement with honor and dignity.—(Here begin with the dative, and change the verbs revolve and retrace into participles, to agree with the dative. But in order to see the necessity of this transposition, begin with the nominatives, and preserve the grammatical order of the English, in these two examples; and their inelegance, when compared with the other, will immediately appear.)

But though elegance of style depends very much on this transposition, care must be taken to avoid a confused intermixture of words, that, for instance, what belongs to a clause of a sentence in which the relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, occurs, and is dependent upon it, may not be intermixed with the clause which contains the antecedent; as,

The man who has once transgressed the bounds of modesty, must be completely and perfectly impudent.

It may not be inelegant to say,

Qui semel verecundiæ fines transierit, eum prorsus oportet esse impudentem. But to say,

Qui semel verecundiæ, eum prorsus oportet esse impudentem, fines transierit, would render the sense obscure and unintelligible.

Besides this obscurity, whoever wishes to acquire an elegant style will be careful to avoid a too frequent repetition of the same word, if it does not tend to give greater weight or perspicuity to the subject. The same syllable too closely and frequently repeated, must be harsh to the

ear, and therefore inelegant; as *monet et hortatur*. I would not say, *per perbreve tempus*, but *per tempus perbreve*; though Cicero himself sometimes falls into this apparent negligence, as *sed multò etiam magis monente et denuntiante te*. Several words following each other with the same termination, should be carefully avoided; as *etiam æternos multos claros viros nominarem*. And what can be more offensive to the ears than these words, *flentes, plorantes, lacrymantes, obtestantes*? To this negligence must be referred a too great concourse or clashing of the same letter, which either must produce a disagreeable harshness in the sound, if a repetition of the same consonants, as *Rex Xerxes*, or if they are vowels, must cause such a hiatus as will produce some difficulty to pronounce, as *magno aperto ore*. Where it is possible to give a strict attention to the smooth concourse of the words, without endangering the force of the idea, when the preceding word terminates with a consonant the next should begin with a vowel, and *vice versâ*. There are a few words, however, the succession of which is not arbitrary, but which has been fixed by the unvaried usage of the ancients. *Ac* is not found before a vowel, but always before a consonant: we do not say *ac ego*, but *atque ego*; seldom *neque autem*, but *neque verò*. It will also be very necessary to guard against poetical endings of a prose sentence, which though not very culpable or disagreeable in themselves, yet will not fail to displease, as they carry an appearance of affectation and studied conceit. This fault indeed was

much sooner observed by the ancients, who are supposed in their common conversation to have pronounced the language more according to metre, than it can be by us, who pronounce many syllables different from their quantity; as this hexameter of Tacitus;

Urbem Romam à principio reges habuere.

Or this line from the same author, which is still a more complete verse :

Auguriis patrum, et priscâ formidine sacram.

Every kind of ambiguity should also be carefully avoided, as for instance, in the case of adjectives, where *multorum*, if used instead of *multarum rerum*, might be mistaken for the masculine gender.

A List of Latin Prose authors, whose authority may be safely followed by the young scholar, and whose style may be imitated with advantage, as exhibiting the purest standard of Latin elegance.

CICERO, CÆSAR, LIVY, NEPOS, SALLUST, TERENCE, flourished during the golden age, which is commonly computed from the time of the second Punic war to the year 14 after Christ. These writers afford the best specimens of classic purity, with respect to the selection of words. At the same time it may be observed, that words, which occur only once or twice in Cicero, as *munitare*, *invalidudo*, may be considered of doubtful authority; and words which occur in Livy, Cæsar, C. Nepos, or Sallust, only, as *famæ*, *arum*, equally doubtful.

QUINTILIAN, TACITUS, CURTIUS, JUSTIN, VAL-

MAXIMUS, PLINY the younger, flourished in the silver age, which is computed from the year 14 to about the year 140 after Christ. These authors may be safely followed, as the most reputable of that age ; and though the Latin language began to decline in their time, yet it exhibited in their writings no unfavourable model of the purity and elegance of the Augustan age.

The word *vir* is used when the praise or excellence of any one is mentioned, never when blame is expressed : *Homo* is used indiscriminately.

EXAMPLES.

1. *A man* of the greatest virtue and honor has been cruelly put to death by a *man* of the most abandoned and infamous character.

2. I am very intimate with Fabius, that most excellent and learned *man*. (To be intimate with, *familiariter uti*.)

3. He put them in mind, that as Darius had a greater number of *persons*, so he had a greater number of *men*.

The same distinction is generally made between the pronouns *ille* and *iste* ; *ille* denoting praise, and *iste* blame or contempt, as *vir ille maximus*, *iste furcifer*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Behold *that* liberty, which you have so ardently desired.

2. *These things* (cruelty and insolence) are to be attributed to arms and victory, not to Cæsar.

Speaking of an obscure or contemptible person, the Latins generally make use of *nescio quis* for *quidam*. Though they also use *nescio quis*, not merely to vilify, but to magnify any thing.

1. What have you to dread, when you are defending your cause against *some accuser*, whose eloquence no one ever feared?

2. But then I affirm, that, when to a good and excellent natural disposition, the embellishments of learning are added (*ratio doctrinae*) there results *a something* great and extraordinary.

Quispiam, *quisquam*, *ullus*, and *unquam* are elegantly used after negatives and comparatives, after *vix*, and *si*, when there is any doubt, after an interrogation or prohibition, and the preposition *sine*. Observe that *quisquam*, *quispiam*, and *ullus* are thus distinguished from *quivis* and *quilibet*; the former are generally used in a negative or interrogative sense, the latter always in the affirmative.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Quispiam*: Is there *any person* in the world of whom you think better?

2. *Quisquam*: You deny that the tyrant has been more cruel to Syracuse than *any one* of his predecessors.

3. *Let no man's* offence make you lose your greatness of soul.

4. They themselves had delivered many great men, *without* the suspicion of *any one*.

5. *Ullus*: *Scarcely* have you left the other orators (with their leave let me speak it) *any* merit that they can reap.

Ullus should be always used instead of *omnis* after the preposition *sine*; as,

Without *all* doubt.

6. *Unquam*: Darius having in his flight drank water, which was muddy, and defiled with dead bodies, *said that he had never* drank with greater pleasure.

(Observe that for the sake of brevity, the verb *dico* followed by *non* is not inelegantly changed into the verb *nego*, as *negavi me esse facturum*, for *dixi me non facturum esse*.)

Nequis is elegantly used for *ut nemo*.

EXAMPLES.

1. They discharged him from his office, *that no one* should afterwards commit the same crime with impunity.

2. They granted a writ against him, *that no man* might say that they had not the power to degrade a man.

Nec quidquam is more elegantly said than *et nihil*.

EXAMPLE.

And physicians, generals and orators, though they understand perfectly the principles of their science, can effect *nothing* very great or meritorious, without experience or practice. (*Artis præcepta percipere.*)

Ipsè is often used for the adjective *totus* or *integer*, in defining numbers or space of time with great exactness.

EXAMPLES.

1. I have been absent three *whole* days.

2. I spent three *whole* months in visiting and exploring a country, which some writers have described in so lively a manner.

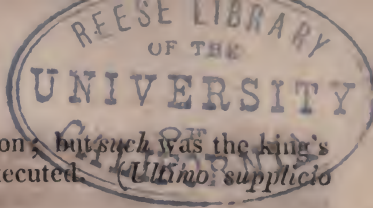
The pronoun *is*, is most frequently used for *talis*, followed by *ut*, or *qui*; as, *non is sum quem contemnas*.

EXAMPLES.

1. I am not *such* a man, *that* I should utter a falsehood.

2. I have seen *such* a monster, *that* if I should see another as terrible, I should die with horror.

3. We must use *such* liberality, *as* may profit friends, and hurt no one



4. Many were convicted of treason; but *such* was the king's clemency, *that* only three were executed. (*Ultimo supplicio affici.*)

5. *Such* was the discipline of the Romans, *that* the son was punished by the father himself: and thus this excellent young man was capitally punished by his father for his excessive courage. (*Pænas morte dedit.*)

Observe, that as *pæna* properly signifies atonement or satisfaction, it is put in the accusative, the person who inflicts the punishment in the dative, the crime for which it is inflicted in the genitive, and the manner how in the ablative. Literally, *he paid by his death satisfaction to his father for his courage.*

Idem is most frequently used for *item*, *porrò*, *etiam*, *simul*, and *tum-tum*: *quod idem mæstitiam reprehendit, idem jocum.*

EXAMPLES.

1. For we see that there have been those, who *at the same time* could speak with dignity and elegance, *at the same time* with artful evasion and subtilty.

2. Caninius, *both* your friend *and* ours, having come to my house late in the evening, and told me that he would go to you early the next day, I told him that I would give him something in the morning, and begged him to ask me for it.

3. He used that kind of food, which was most sweet and wholesome, and *at the same time* most easy to digest.

Instead of rendering the English word *all* by *omnis*, it will sometimes be necessary to use *omnino*, sometimes, *nullus non*, or *quisque*, and sometimes the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*.

1. There were *in all* but two ways, by which they could go out of their country; one through the Sequani, narrow and difficult; the other through our province, much easier and readier.

2. The queen most bountifully entertained him with *all* courtesy and hospitality.

3. Because the inhabitants offered so little money to redeem the town, they began to demolish *all the noblest buildings*.

4. *All the time that* he spent upon his lusts and sports, (which was a great part of his time) he stole from the state, the government of which he had undertaken.

For the English, *all of them, all of whom*, the best Latin writers use *illi omnes, qui omnes*.

EXAMPLE.

1. Our men, seeing the enemy entirely dispersed, *all of whom* had thrown down their arms, retired within their own entrenchments.

The English word *every* may also be variously rendered by *singuli, quisque*, when it implies *each*; sometimes by *singuli* repeated; by *alius alius*, when it implies a diversity; each in their separate cases: as, *Trahit sua quemque Voluptas; singulis legionibus singulos legatos*. *Every*, before a word of time, or used distributively, may likewise be rendered by *in* with an accusative case.

EXAMPLES.

1. The strength of all sciences, like the old man's faggot, consists not in *every single stick*, but in all of them united in the band.

2. The Biographer of Atticus observes, that they, who are one day at the height of power and honor, are often the next

in the gulph of danger and despair; so that this remark is generally very true: *every man's manners fashion and shape his fortune.*

3. *To every thing there is a season*, and it is the duty of *every man* to use his time profitably to himself and others.

4. In *every* corner of the court there was a *court*. (plural)

*5. *Every man has his particular delight.* As for me, my pleasure lies in wise thinking and reasonable desires; give me a sound and a sober understanding—a temper that never falls out with men and accidents—that takes all things with good humor, computes rightly upon their value, and puts them to the use for which they are fit. (*alia alium*, with a verb active.)

6. He changes his wavering mind *every* hour.

7. No one gave less than eighteen bushels *every* acre.

The word *some* also, when repeated, or followed by the word *other*, is rendered by *alius alius*, or *hic* and *ille*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Of the things objected to him, *some* he acknowledged, *some* he extenuated, *some* he excused by reason of human frailty, the greater part he flatly denied.

2. They, *alleging some one cause, and some another*, withdrew themselves daily, by degrees, out of that rude and barbarous country.

3. Certainly the inclination of princes to *some men*, and their aversion to *others*, may seem fatal.

4. *Some* think one thing, *some* another.

One another is also rendered by *hic* and *ille*, by *alter alter*, *alius alius*, and *quisque*: as *one man*

delights in *one* style of speaking, *another* in *another* : *alius alio dicendi genere gaudet*.

EXAMPLES.

1. It was agreed, that there should be free commerce, till *one* prince should denounce war against *the other*.

2. There is *one* kind of deportment due to a father, and *another* to a son; one to our own countryman, and *another* to a stranger; *one* to a friend or benefactor, and *another* to an enemy who has injured us.

3. It is very difficult to determine nicely, what *one man* ought to make good to *another*.

Modern writers often place the preposition *de* for *of* before the place of abode of any person, as *Thomas of Norwich*; *Thomas de Norvico*. But this is inaccurate, and never used by classical writers. We should say, *Thomas Norvicensis*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Aristotle of Stagyra slept little, and always had one arm out of his couch and held in his hand a bullet, which by falling into a brazen bason underneath, early awaked him.

2. Some writers have denominated *Patavinity*, those expressions, and a certain Dialect, which they seem to discover in the style of *Livy of Patavium*.

Instead of, is expressed in Latin,

1st. Before a substantive, by *pro* with an ablative, *loco* or *vice* with a genitive.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cato alone is to me *instead of* a hundred.

2. Men who read Lucilius *instead of* Horace, and Lucretius *instead of* Virgil.

3. You have so endeared yourself to me by your kindness, that you shall always be to me *instead of* a brother.

When a succession or change of place is expressed, *instead of* is rendered by *in locum*.

EXAMPLES.

1. When men are about to engage in battle, how could they shake off the fear of so many toils and pains, and even of death itself, if *instead of them*, piety and fortitude, and the image of honor were not present to their minds?

2. He sent me *instead of* another.

2dly, before a verb.

If the subject is a thing that *ought* to be done, *instead of* is expressed by *cum* with the subjunctive of *debeo*; as,

Instead of studying he plays.

We should say,

Ludit cum studere deberet.

EXAMPLES.

1. The conduct of our generals deserves the greatest reprehension. They waste their precious time in disputing among themselves, *instead of* marching directly against the enemy, and commencing the engagement.

2. *Instead of* showing his gratitude for the favors which he has received, he wholly neglects his friends.

3. *Instead of* observing a strict discipline, the soldiers of the enemy are now dispersed over the whole country.

If the subject is a thing that *might* be done, *instead of* is expressed by *cum* with the subjunctive of *posum*; as,

*Instead of playing he studies ;
We should say,
Studet cum ludere posset.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Instead of* betaking himself to rest, after the fatigues and labours of the day, he used to retire into his closet, where he generally devoted several hours of the night to study and meditation.

2. *Instead of* sheltering himself under a tree, he encounters the whole fury of the storm.

3. How pitiable is his case, who, in his journey through life, *instead of* enjoying with moderation the fruits of his honest labors, even debars himself of those innocent refreshments which offer themselves by the way.

Observe, if the verb is in a past tense, *debeo* or *possum* must be put in the pluperfect ; as,

He played, *instead of* studying ;
We should say,
Ludebat cum studere debuisset.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Instead of* pursuing the enemy, and reaping the fruits of his glorious victory at Cannæ, Hannibal kept his army the greatest part of the winter at Capua, the dissoluteness and luxuries of which city so enervated the minds and bodies of his soldiers, that Marcellus seems to have said with great propriety, that Capua had proved a Cannæ to Hannibal.

*2. He retarded the progress of his attainments and studies by a culpable carelessness and indifference, *instead of* putting to the best advantage and improving those excellent talents which nature had given him.

3. The Tyrant Dionysius, *instead of* adorning the mind of the son of Dion with virtue and learning, brought him up in such a manner, that though he was but a boy, he soon plunged into every species of debauchery and dissoluteness.

3dly, If it is a thing that *ought not to be done, instead of* is turned into *and not, or rather than*; as,

You ought to study, *instead of* playing.

We should say,

Studere deberes, non autem ludere; or, *studere deberes, potius quàm ludere.*

EXAMPLES.

1. A wise governor ought to encourage peaceful arts, *instead of* endangering the safety of his country by useless wars.

2. Shall we spend our precious time in ease and idleness, *instead of* studying the liberal arts, and storing our minds with various kinds of knowledge?

3. We ought to apply a part of our fortunes in relieving the indigent, redressing the oppressed, and in doing acts of kindness to all, *instead of* squandering our riches in profligacy and extravagance.

So far from is rendered in Latin sometimes by *adeò non, ita non*, sometimes by *tantum abest ut*, followed by *ut*, or by *non modo non-sed etiam, non solum non-verum etiam*; as,

You are *so far from* loving me, that you rather hate me: *Tantum abest ut me ames, ut me potius oderis.*

EXAMPLES.

1. He was *so far from* being superstitious, *that* he despised those many sacrifices and temples in his own country: *so far from* being fearful of death, *that* he was slain in battle in the service of the public.

2. He was so far from being greedy of money, that he made no other use of it, than to free his friends from dangers and inconveniences with it. (*An ablative with participle fut. in dus.*)

3. Attieus' peacefulness and neutrality, were so acceptable to Cæsar, that when he was victor, and commanded money from private persons by letter, he was so far from molesting him, that he delivered him up his sister's son out of Pompey's camp.

4. You are so far from loving me, that you injure me as much as you can.

5. So far is my grief from being lessened, that it is increased.

On the point of, is rendered in Latin by *in eo ut*; *it is in agitation to*, by *id agitur ut*: and *in the case of* before a noun, is expressed by *in* with an ablative.

EXAMPLES.

1. As he had been cast in his suit, he was on the point of being ruined.

2. They made a sally from every gate, and were already on the point of being repulsed, when they sounded a retreat, and returned into the town.

3. He had as many votes as the law required, and it was understood that it was in agitation to elect him consul.

4. What strange perverseness is that, if the same thing be done in your case, which you yourself did in the case of another.

5. He assured them that he would do, as he had done in the case of his other enemies.

Primus, unus, solus, ultimus, frustra, &c. are

used simply with the verb, instead of *primus fuit qui*, &c....as also the interrogative *quis* : as,

Who is there that would not embrace virtue herself? Quis virtutem non amplectitur ipsam?

EXAMPLES.

1. *He was the only one who* remained at his post.
2. *Sicily was the first of foreign states which* courted the friendship of the Roman people.
3. But the Ubians, *who were the only nation* of all those beyond the Rhine *that* had sent Ambassadors to Cæsar, earnestly entreated him to come to their assistance.
4. *It is in vain for* a man to avoid prodigality, if he turn to the contrary excess.
5. *Who is there that* does not hate a vicious and saucy young man? On the contrary, *who is there who* does not admire and love modesty and faithfulness, though they no way concern himself?

Without before a substantive after a negation may be expressed by *nisi, nisi cum*; as, *They fight not without pay: non pugnant nisi stipendiati.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Labienus, when he had spoken these things, swore that he would not return into the camp *without* victory. (Without being victorious.)
2. The Queen answered, that she had no power to give the daughters of her subjects in marriage, *without* the consent of their parents.

Or it may be expressed by a verb, a participle, or an adverb; as, *Grass grows without bidding, or sowing: injussa virescunt Gramina.*

EXAMPLES.

1. The death of this man *was not without* suspicion of poison among the vulgar, who always suspect those to be poisoned whom they love.

2. If Pompey, when he was sick, had died in Naples, he would not have been engaged in a war with his father-in-law; he had not taken up arms *without preparation*.

3. The best things which we do are painful, and the exercise of them grievous, if they are continued *without intermission*.

4. He finished the business *without staying* longer.

5. They went off *without observing* that they were closely watched.

Let it be observed, that where the latter clause is emphatical, the verb should be used instead of the *participle*.

6. He walks through the garden *without admiring* the sweetness of the lilies and roses; the beautiful order of the walks, and the melodious singing of the birds. (*nec tamen*.)

Without, before a verb, may be expressed by the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, by *quin*, or by an ablative absolute; as, *He does nothing without consulting you*: *nihil agit quin te consulat*, or *te inconsulto*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Since my father does nothing great or small *without* communicating it to me, why should he conceal this from me?

2. I cannot read *Tully* concerning old age; concerning friendship; his offices; or his Tusculan questions, *without* almost adoring that divinely inspired breast.

3. It is a miserable thing to die before one's time. What time, I pray? That of Nature? Why Nature for her part gave you the use of life, as of so much money, *without* setting any day of payment.

Opus est is elegantly followed by the ablative of the participle passive; as, instead of *maturare opus est*, we should say, *maturato opus est*.

EXAMPLE.

Before you begin, *it is necessary to deliberate*, and when you have deliberated, *you must act* with vigor and dispatch. (*maturè facto*)

Observe that where there is a neuter adjective or pronoun, especially when followed by *quo*, it is better for the sake of perspicuity to use *opus* with the nominative; or as some grammarians have it, *opus* must become an adjective; as,

He has need of what he enjoys: *Id ei opus est, quo fruitur*. It would not be so well to say, *opus est eo quo*, because they might be taken for the masculine.

EXAMPLES.

1. You have no *need of that which* I have need of; whilst you are contented with your own condition, and even superfluities are become necessary to me.

2. He has *need of that very thing* which Hannibal and many other generals used in the midst of the greatest dangers, and in every engagement which they call presence of mind.

We say that the verb *sum* is followed by a genitive or an ablative when it serves to denote a quality, praise and blame, &c. but it is only

When there is an adjective added to the substantive ; as,

That lady is of remarkable beauty.

We should not say *pulchritudine* alone. And it must be observed that the genitives or ablatives are not always used indiscriminately ; we should not say *est magni natûs*, but *magno natu*.

EXAMPLES.

*1. But lest I should entertain too sanguine a hope of success in a pursuit, which admits of so much uncertainty, I commit myself and my fortunes solely to your favour and well known benevolence ; for indeed what right have I to use so pressing a solicitation to you, who are *of the highest authority and most consummate wisdom* ?

2. When Timoleon *had so great an authority and such complete power*, that he might have governed them even against their will, but at the same time so much possessed the love and affections of the Sicilians, that he might have obtained the kingdom with the unanimous consent of all ; preferring their love to their fear, he abdicated the sovereign power and lived a private man at Syracuse.

*3. *He is a man of consummate prudence* but his brother is a youth of a *daring disposition*.

Oportet, opus est, necesse est, velim, &c. usually take an infinitive after them, or a subjunctive with the conjunction *ut* : but it is more elegant to omit this conjunction ; as it is likewise to leave it out after the verb *caveo*.

EXAMPLE.

There is a certain intemperate degree of affection toward our friends, which it is necessary that *we should restrain*.

But instead of *non opus est, non oportet, quid est opus*, it is more elegant simply to say *non est quod, nihil est quod*; as, *nihil est quod mihi agas gratias*; There is no reason that you should thank me.

EXAMPLES.

1. Concerning the affairs of Britain, I understand from your letters, that *there is no need* to apprehend any danger.

2. I am distracted with my apprehensions concerning the health of our Tullia, concerning which *there is no need* to write more largely to you.

3. *What occasion is there* to build a tragedy on so trifling a subject?

RULES FOR THE PRONOUN *qui, quæ, quod*, AND OTHER RELATIVES.

Nec quidquam est, quod tam deceat studiosum rectæ Latinitatis, quàm iste usus pronominis istius.

NOTHING occurs more frequently in Cicero, and in the best Latin authors, than the use of *qui, quæ, quod*, varied according to the sense and structure of the sentence; but in most cases it will be found to contribute to brevity, as forming an essential part of elegance, and will give a more compact and close connexion to sentences. After *dignus* and *indignus*, especially *qui* is used in its different cases for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is, ut meus, ut tibi, ut noster, &c.* followed by the subjunctive mood: as, you are worthy to be loved; *dignus es, qui ameris*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Your mother deserves, or is worthy, *that* you should love *her*, obey *her*, and learn of *her*. (Use the pronoun *qui* in these different cases, as governed by the different verbs.)

2. You are worthy *that* I should look to your happiness. (*Quorum.*)

3. You have been worthy *that* we should listen to *you*.

4. My parents are worthy *that* every kind of happiness should befall *them*.

*5. But after they have spent their youth in the greatest debauchery and profligacy, after they have disgraced their birth and noble name by the vilest actions, and most atrocious crimes,

they are indeed *unworthy* that you should pardon their enormities, or again receive them into your society.

One of the greatest difficulties which the scholar meets with, in writing correct and elegant Latin, is, to ascertain when the relative *qui*, and other relative particles, require the subjunctive mood after them, though the sense of the English seems to demand an indicative; I shall therefore offer a few rules and observations on this subject, for the substance of which I am indebted to the valuable remarks of Dr. Crombie, in his "Gymnasium," who seems to be the first critic who has suggested the principle of the first rule.

When the relative clause does not refer to the sentiments of the author, but of the person or persons of whom he speaks, then the subjunctive mood is used: as, *Tarquin said, that he (Servius) was a partisan of the lowest rabble, from whom he sprung; that he laid upon the nobles all the burdens, which before were common: Esse fautorem infimi generis hominum, ex quo ipse sit; omnia onera, quæ communia quondam fuerint, inclinasse in primores civitatis.* Here the relative clauses do not express the sentiments of the author, Livy, but of the person, Tarquin, of whom he is speaking. At the same time it will be necessary to observe the distinction between the subjunctive and the potential moods; because, in many cases, the sense may require the potential, without being affected by the relative: as, *He ordered them to report what they said, quæ dicerent, that*

is *what they should say*, potential. If, on the contrary, the relative clause refers to the sentiments of the author or writer, or is the actual language of the person of whom the author is speaking, the relative is followed by the indicative mood.

EXAMPLES.

1. He declared that he was now eighty years old, and had carried arms in the very territory now in question, not indeed when he was a very young man, for he was then serving for the twentieth time, when that war broke out. He wondered in what manner those neighbours could hope to obtain from a people, *to whose decision they appealed*, those lands, *of which they had never claimed the right*, while that state flourished. As for himself, he had but a short time to live, but he could not satisfy his mind, without lending his feeble voice, old as he was, to assert their right to that territory, *which he, when a soldier, had conquered* by arms, fighting with all the courage he possessed. (This evidently refers to the sentiments of the speaker, and not to those of the writer: as also in the subsequent example.)

2. He rested the point of controversy not on the order of succession, but on the felicity of his birth. That his brother indeed had been born first, but it was while his father was yet in a private station; that he on the contrary was the first born, after his father had been advanced to the throne. That his brothers, therefore, *who were born before him*, might claim as their right the private patrimony, *which* their father possessed at that time, but not the kingdom; but that he was the first, *whom his father had brought up* after he had obtained the kingdom.

3. You see, he said, the dress and ornament of your general, *which* not any one of my enemies *has laid upon me*; for that would have been some consolation. (These are the indetical words of the speaker, and not the sentiments of the author; and therefore the relative clause is followed by an indicative: if instead of being the very words of the speaker, they had been his sentiments, as reported by the historian, the verb would have been the subjunctive, *imposuisset*: in this manner, *he told them that they saw the dress, which not an enemy had laid on him.*)

4. He then marched into Greece, and overthrew many cities, by the extermination of which the Spartans, being alarmed, enclose with fortifications their city, *which they had always defended* with arms, and not with walls, in opposition to their oracles, and the ancient glory of their ancestors. (This refers evidently to the sentiments of the writer, and therefore the relative is followed by an indicative.)

When the relative clause expresses the cause of the action, and may be rendered in English by the preposition *in* with the participle; or when it is used for *et quod* is, *et quoniam* is, &c. or comes after *ut pote*, *ut quippe*, it will be followed by the subjunctive mood: as, *omnes—laudare fortunas meas, qui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum*; *All praised my fortunes, who had, or, in having, or, because I had, such a son.*

EXAMPLE.

1. Happy sailor, *who gained* the shores, and was safely drawn on dry land.
 2. How ungrateful you are to fortune, *who thus make a toil* of a pleasure.
 3. Since there are many kinds of guests, *who estimate, or and because they estimate* my expense by their own, *and despise* my homely fare, them I never will invite.
-

When the relative follows an interrogative, or a negative, and expresses the same thing and subject as the antecedent clause, it is joined with the subjunctive mood: as, *There is no one who does not hate you: nemo est, qui te non orderit.* This is for the sake of avoiding ambiguity; since, if we said, *nemo est, qui te non odit*, it might be construed, *he who hates you not is nobody.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Who* is the boy, *who* can apply to his studies, where there is such a noise?

2. There is *no one who does not understand*, that the body is then most pleasantly affected, and best recruited, when it is refreshed with seasonable and moderate sleep.

The relative coming after the English verbs *to be*, *to be found*, when preceded by the word *there*, is, for the sake of perspicuity, followed by the subjunctive mood: as, *There are men who say; sunt qui dicant.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *There have been found men, who* voluntarily shortened their own life: these I think worse, and more mischievous.

2. *There are* philosophers, *who think* that the most precious thing in life is time.

When the relative comes after intensive words, as, *such*, *so*, and is used for *ut ego*, *ut tu*, &c. it is followed by the subjunctive: as, *I am not such a man as to say*, or, *I am not the man, who says; non sum is, qui dicam.* This will not take place after the demonstrative pronoun *is*; for it would then be, *I am not that man, who say, non sum is qui dico*, or, *I who say am not that man.*

EXAMPLES.

1. I am not so hard-hearted, *as to deny* you your request.

2. *Such* is the authority of this man, *that it can neither be shaken* by the secret intrigue of his enemies, nor by the open attacks of the multitude.

For the sake of perspicuity the subjunctive will be used after *qui*, when it is preceded by such restrictive words as, *solus, unicus, unus* : as, *He is the only one of the family who learns ; est solus ex familiâ qui discat* ; were we to say *discit*, it might be mistaken for, *he who learns is the only one of the family*.

EXAMPLES.

1. He was *the only one* of the philosophers, *who maintained* that wisdom was the *only* guide of life, *which led* to happiness.

2. He was *the only one who said* that the soul of man is the man, that the body is nothing but a dwelling or an instrument.

When *qui* is used for the interrogative indefinite *quis*, and not as a mere relative, it is followed by the subjunctive ; as *Tell me, whom you see, dic mihi quem videas* : if it was merely the relative, as in this sentence, *I know the man whom you see*, it would be, *notus est mihi homo, quem vides*.

EXAMPLES.

1. As for me, from the time when I first saw you, and learnt from most men, with whom I conversed, *what* erudition and virtue *you possessed*, it became the first object of my wishes, to gain your love and esteem.

2. Do you inquire *to what end tend* so many sciences, and *by what arts men have polished* the rude manners of barbarians, and *have changed* worse for better, disgraceful for excellent, and the vilest for the most precious things ?

It is not only after *dignus*, that the relative *qui* is used for *ut*, but in general where the relative

clause indicates any final cause, design or purpose, and might be rendered by a supine, by *ut* or *ad*, then *qui* may be elegantly used: as *He sent ambassadors to sue for peace; misit legatos qui pacem peterent.*

EXAMPLE.

1. He sent certain men *to* bring him to town.
 2. Then Romulus by the advice of the Fathers sent Embassadors to the neighboring states *to* solicit the friendship and connubial alliances with this newly established people.
 3. I did not give you money to use at your pleasure.
 4. He further enjoined them to send spies into all parts *to* learn the designs and motions of their enemies.
 5. As he could not assault the place by covert ways, he ordered the engines to be ready, *to assault* it by open force.
 6. I gave you those books *to send* to your brother. (This might also be elegantly rendered by the participle future passive.)
-

And in many other instances it is used for the English infinitive, where the sense will easily admit of it.

EXAMPLES.

1. As a calm at sea is understood, when the least breath of wind does not stir the waves; so is the quiet and peaceful state of the mind beheld, when there is no passion *to discompose* it.
2. They have no clocks *to distinguish* hours, nor miles *to show* the distance of places.
3. My drift is not to take away the army from Pompey, and keep it myself, which yet were no difficult matter for me to do; but that he may not have it *to use* against me.
4. Cæsar does us wrong *to lessen* our tributes by his coming.

In sentences which admit of a transposition, without creating any obscurity, it is very elegant to put the relative *qui, quæ, quod*, and its compounds, before the antecedent, in the beginning of the sentence ; as *quam mecum colis amicitiam, multi laudant* : and to give greater force or stress to the sense, and in order to form a stronger connexion between the relative and the antecedent, the pronouns *is, hic, idem, &c.* are elegantly placed before the second member of the sentence ; as *quem deus misit, ei non creditis*, whom God hath sent, him ye believe not.

EXAMPLES.

1. We commonly say that *those men* are always asleep, *who* in our opinion are indifferent and careless about every thing. (*Quos putamus.*)

2. Nothing can be more foolish than *those, who*, in a free city, behave themselves in an audacious and alarming manner.

3. Let every man exercise himself in the profession, *which* he knows !

4. *Whatever* change of manners takes place in princes will soon pass into the people.

*5. What ! did not those men destroy every vestige of religion, who asserted that the opinion we entertain of the immortal Gods was artfully inculcated by some wise men from motives of state policy ; that religion might lead *those* men to the performance of their duty, *whom* no principle of reason could influence.

*6. For certainly no one invested with supreme power and authority, would (unless he was moved by the persuasion of sublime and enchanting oratory,) so far condescend to listen to justice, without a violent effort on his part, as to suffer himself to be put on a level with *those whom* he possessed such means of excelling ; and of his own free will to depart from those de-

lightful habits, which must already, from their antiquity, have obtained the force of nature.

7. Drops of crimson blood distil and stain the earth with gore from the tree, *which* I tore from the soil, having first broken its roots asunder.

8. The same land shall receive you returning thither in its fertile bosom, *which* first brought you forth the race of mighty ancestors.

9. For every one after the loss of life covered with his body *that* spot of ground, *which* he had chosen and occupied in the engagement when alive.

10. *Those* monuments, *which* he had erected to his fame by the greatness of his genius and learning, lived many ages after him; and even afterwards, when a thick and impenetrable cloud had almost entirely extinguished the light of sciences, they were indeed erased from the sight of men, but they left in the minds of the learned an incredible regret and sorrow for their loss.

When the relative in the beginning of a sentence is used for *hoc, id, &c.* and serves as a connexion to what goes before, then it must always be placed the first word.

EXAMPLES.

1. When cranes traverse the seas in search of warmer climates, they are observed to form the figure of a triangle. Those at the base, nestle their necks and heads in the back of those, that fly before them. Since the leader himself cannot do *this*, because he has nothing, by which he may support himself, he flies back that he may also in his turn rest himself and one of those that have rested succeed to his place. This mutual succession is preserved during their whole flight.

Est, sunt, erit, &c. elegantly admit the relative *qui, quæ, quod*, with the omission of the an-

precedent *aliquis quoddam*, &c. followed by an indicative or a subjunctive ; as,

Est de quo tibi gratulor.

EXAMPLES.

1. There is *some one to whom* you can give these letters.
2. You have *what* to write, in these eventful times.
3. There were *some men* at that time *who* said Cicero did not deserve so highly of his country.
4. There *are some men whose* delight is to follow the camp, and to encounter the dangers of war.

The omission of the antecedent is also elegant, where it may be easily inferred from the sense of the subject ; as,

You have one, or, a friend, who wishes you well :

Habes, qui tibi bene cupiat.

EXAMPLES.

1. He sent *men or servants, to* invite all his friends to supper.
2. Sciences are soon acquired, if you have *a master who can* teach them with diligence and faithfulness.
(This rule may be referred to the former.)

The pronoun *is*, or *ille*, is oftener understood before the relative *qui, quæ, quod*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *He who* despises riches, is a wise man.
2. But if we retreat through fear and consternation, these same circumstances will be adverse to us ; neither the advantage of situation, nor the number of allies, will be able to protect *him, whom* arms could not protect.

The relatives *qualis, quantus, quot*, are elegantly placed before the antecedents, *talis, tantus, tot*; and the relative adverbs *quantò ubi, quò, quàm, quamdiù quoties*, before *tantò, ibi, hoc*, or *eò, tam, tamdiù, toties*; as,

Atlas was made as great a mountain, as he was a man:

Quantus erat, tantus mons factus Atlas.

EXAMPLES.

1. Citizens usually conform themselves to the example of those, who govern the state. (Say, *such* as those, who govern the state, *such* are usually citizens.)

2. There are almost *as many* different kinds of speaking, *as* there are orators.

3. *The* more elevated we are in rank, *the* more submissive should we behave ourselves.

4. *As long as* the life of Crassus was harrassed by the toils and intrigues of ambition, *so long* did he receive greater renown from his private actions and greatness of mind, than profit or glory from the power and dignity of the state.

*5. Spurius Cavilius having contracted a lameness from a wound, which he had received in the service of his country, and being ashamed on that account to appear abroad, his mother said to him, Why do you not show yourself before the public, my dear Spurius, that *as many* steps as you take, the mind may be struck with the remembrance of *so many* virtues?

For *omnis qui*, and *omnia quæ*, it is often much better, as it is more concise, to put *quicumque, quisquis*, and *quidquid*.

EXAMPLES.

I wish you to consider that *in all things, in which* you can show a kindness to my friend, you will bind me to you by the strongest ties of gratitude.

The pronoun *quid* is most frequently used for the adverb *cur*; as,

Why do yo you weep?

And on the contrary it is more elegant to use the adverbs *cur, quare, quamobrem*, instead of *propter* or *ob quem, quam, quod, &c.* as,

Many reasons occurred to my mind *for which* I thought that labour would prove an honor to you.

Multa mihi veniebant in mentem quamobrem illum laborem tibi honori fore putarem.

EXAMPLES.

1. Nor yet have I been able to devise any reason, *for which* he ought to undertake their cause.

2. But if there is no reason *for which* you should load this miserable wretch with so great calamities, my advice is that you should spare him.

3. But there were many reasons for which I wished to be there.

4. There will be *that for which* the enemy may strip you of your arms, not *for which* you should be a terror to them.

To the interrogatives *quis, quæ, quid, quò, quando*, the particle *ec* is elegantly prefixed; as,

Brutus ecquid agit?

Wat does Brutus?

EXAMPLES.

1. I pray you *what* so great misfortune can you imagine, which does not fall to my lot?
 2. *Who* had the power of entering into the forum?
 3. *When* did you suppose that you would give in an account of your proceedings?
-

Id quod is most frequently used for *quod*, when it refers not merely to one substantive, but to the whole preceding sentence; as,

You love virtue; *which* I commend:
Amas virtutem, id quod laudo.

EXAMPLES.

1. The undeserving are often loaded with wealth and honors, whilst the good meet with contempt and repulse; *which* is the reason that virtue itself is not practised with much zeal.
 2. But the man who feels no shame, *which* I find happens in many, I consider not only worthy of reprehension, but even of punishment.
 3. You have signified your intention to leave this country soon; *which* has affected us all with the most lively concern.
-

When the pronoun *is*, is used for *talis*, it is elegantly followed by *qui, quae, quod*, instead of *ut is, ut ea, &c.* as by the same rule *quantus, qualis, quot, quoties*, will be more elegantly put for *ut tantus, talis, tot, toties*; as,

Such, or so great is your desire of revenge, *that* if I was inflamed with *it*, I should be very miserable.

Ea or tanta est tua vindictæ cupido, quâ or quantâ si flagrarem, miserrimus essem.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Such* indeed is your learning, *that*, if I possessed it, I should call myself fortunate.

*2. For I would not have Cæsar, to whom I am bound by the strongest obligations, imagine me capable of giving *such* advice to Pompey, *that*, if he had followed it, he might indeed have obtained the first celebrity and pre-eminence in the forum, but he would not have attained so great power as he now possesses.

*3. As for L. Cæsar, when I had come to him at Naples, though he was bowed down and afflicted with diseases of the body, yet before he could have an opportunity of embracing me, he exclaimed, O my dear Cicero, I congratulate you on having *so much* influence with Dolabella, *that*, if I had *as much* interest with my sister's son, I should pronounce myself quite recovered.

4. You have read Homer *so often*, *that*, if I had read him *as often*, things would go on much better with me.

5. We have gained *so many* trophies from our enemies, that no nation can boast of ever having gained *so many*.

Qui, quæ, quod, is often elegantly used simply for *talis*, or *tantus*, or *qualis*; as,

Such is thy love towards me:

Qui tuus est ergà me amor.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Such* is thy hardness of heart, the divine judgments will at last fall upon thy guilty head.

2. Cities also, as well as other things, spring from the lowest beginnings; afterwards, *such as* their own bravery and the gods assist, get themselves great power, and a great name.

3. Every person holds an inward and secret conversation with his own heart, and *such as* it highly concerns him to regulate properly.

And what deserves to be imitated, as being particularly elegant, is the use of *qualis*, without being preceded by *talis* ; as,

You are blessed with *such* a child, *that* if I had such a one, I should greatly rejoice :

Felix es puero, qualis si mihi esset, magnoperè gauderem.

EXAMPLE.

Especially as the senate and people of Rome had then *such* a leader, *that*, had they now his fellow, the same fate would overtake thee, which then befel them.

Qui, quæ, quod, with or without *quippe*, is very elegantly used for *cum*, or *quòd ego, cum tu, &c.* and *cujus*, for *cum ejus, cum meus, cum tuus* ; *cui* for *cum mihi, &c.* with the verb that follows in the subjunctive mood ; as,

What wonder that men die, *when* we know *that they* are mortal ?

Quid mirum homines mori, quos sciamus mortales esse ? Quos used for *cum eos*.

EXAMPLES.

1. How is it possible that you should converse on the subject of literature, *since* you never paid the least attention to it ?

2. And certainly that conduct of mine is entitled to the highest commendation, *in that* I was unwilling that my fellow citizens should be exposed to a band of armed ruffians.

3. They rated and blamed the Belgæ, *for having surrendered themselves* to the people of Rome, and abandoned the bravery of their progenitors.

*4. The Roman power had already acquired sufficient strength and stability to become a match for any of the neighbouring states in war; but from deficiency of women, it was a greatness that could last but one generation of man, *since they* had at home, no hope of progeny, and were debarred from all intermarriages with their neighbours. (Say, *since* neither the hope, &c. nor intermarriages were *to them*, &c. And use the relative *qui, quæ, quod*.)

The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, is elegantly used after *idem* instead of *ac* or *cum*; as,

Nor had he the *same* master as his father:

Nec eodem magistro, quo pater, usus est.

EXAMPLES.

1. The wise man is not confined within the *same* bounds *with* the rest of the world. No age, no time, no place, limit his thoughts, but he penetrates and passes beyond them all.

2. At the *same* time *with* the Ædui, the Ambarri also acquaint Cæsar, that their country being depopulated, they cannot easily keep off the violence of the enemy from their towns.

3. This nation is not so warlike as the neighbouring states; and it does not make use of *the same* weapons in war, as other nations.

Qui, quæ, quod, is also elegantly used for *et is, et ego, et tu, &c.* for *is vero, tu vero, &c.* in the beginning of a sentence, or a member of a sentence, when it may be easily referred to what goes before; as,

It happened in my absence, *and* had I been present:

Me absente accidit, qui si adfuissem; for et ego, si, or si verò, &c.

EXAMPLES.

1. You have always given me wholesome advice; *and* if I had always followed it, I should have been happy.

2. When I received the information of the death of your daughter Tullia, I felt indeed that sorrow and affliction for her loss, which I could not but feel; I looked upon it as a common calamity; *and* if I had been present *at it*, I would not have been wanting to you, and I would have openly manifested and declared my own grief to you.

*3. But he employed the interval that followed, not in endeavouring to blot out the memory of the ancient quarrel, but in concerting measures to renew the war; *and* after he had built and equipped the most formidable fleets, and had raised powerful armies, under pretence of carrying the war into the dominions of the neighbouring states, he sent Ambassadors into Spain to those commanders, against whom the Romans were in actual hostilities.

4. A friend was then at my house, *and* he told me that he feared it would not succeed. (*Ut succederet. Vereor ne fiat*, expresses what we wish not to happen; *vereor ut fiat*, what we wish to happen, but are afraid it may not.)

5. I asked him this question; *and* when he did not answer I refused to do it.

Qui, quae, quod, may also be used for *quia*, *nam ego, tu, is, &c.* when it is clear from the context, that though the causal conjunction is not inserted, yet it may be easily inferred from the sense; as,

You are truly reprehensible, *for* when you stand in need of the friendship of all, you injure all:

Verè reprehensione dignus es, qui, cùm omnium amicitia indigeas, omnibus nocet; for nam cùm tu omnium, &c.

EXAMPLE.

*1. And even our calamities will furnish some variety to your writings, not unaccompanied with that kind of pleasure, which has the power of arresting the mind in the perusal of history. For nothing is more calculated to afford delight to the reader, than the changes of times, and the vicissitudes of fortune. *For* though to our own experience *they* could not be very desirable, yet in the perusal, they will be entertaining; and, indeed, the remembrance of past calamities, when no longer attended with danger, affords a sensible delight.

2. For, certainly, it is not my part, *since*, as you are used to wonder, *I apply* generally so much industry in writing, to commit myself so far, as to appear to have been negligent in it, especially as that would be the crime, not only of negligence, but also of ingratitude.

3. It was not the part of that general, *since he* knew that he was in the midst of enemies, to suffer his soldiers to go out of the camp unarmed, and to straggle about the fields.

Qui, quæ, quod, is also often used for *cum* in a narration.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cæsar *knowing* that the enemy would immediately abandon their camp, advanced with his forces against them.

2. The man being of some authority, of a grave demeanour, advanced in years, and a father too, was struck dumb with astonishment, at the barefaced proposal of this shameless man.

The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, is often used for a substantive, especially after the verbs *sum* and *habeo*, when the sense seems to demand such a variation; as,

I have *a request* to make to you.

Est quod te rogem.

EXAMPLES.

1. If thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother *hath ought against thee, (that is, a complaint, that of which he may complain)* leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way; first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift.

2. *I have an accusation against thee*, that thou has deserted thy first love.

Qui, quæ, quod, may in some instances, be used for the English particle *after*; as,

The fourth year *after* he had come:

Quarto quo venerat anno.

EXAMPLE.

What! have you not heard of Cæsar's achievements in Spain? Two armies beaten? Two generals defeated? Two provinces taken? These things were done *forty days after* Cæsar was come in view of the enemy.

It must be observed, that though the English very often omits the relative, yet the ellipsis must always be supplied in Latin.

EXAMPLES.

1. The man *I saw* yesterday, told me of your disaster.

2. Go into the village *over against you*, and bring away all the provision, *you can collect*, that we may set sail again immediately.

OF VERBS.

AS it is sometimes difficult to determine, when an accusative with the infinitive is to be used, after the English conjunction *that*, and when it is better to turn *that* into *quòd* or *ut* with a nominative followed by an indicative or subjunctive, it will be proper to attend to these few observations.

We always use *ut*, and never the accusative with the infinitive, after *ita*, *sit*, *talis*, or *is* used for *talis*, *tantus*, *adeò*; after verbs of *causing* or *effecting*, *persuading*, *impelling*, *exhorting*, *advising*, *compelling*, *entreating*, *beseeking*, *decreeing*, *commanding*, except *jubeo*; and after verbs of *telling*, *writing*, and *announcing*, when they carry with them the force of a command; as,

Tell him *to* come.

The Senate wrote to him *to* return.

And also after *accidit*, *fit*, *contingit*.

EXAMPLES.

1. He persuaded me *to* write.
2. I beseech you *to* come.
3. I happened *to* see you.
4. He commanded me *to* come.
5. Your neighbor is plunged into *such* profligacy and luxury, *that* words cannot describe his desperate condition.

6. Therefore he goes directly to Marius ; he informs him of what had been done, and *advises him to* attempt the castle on the side, by which he had climbed up ; he promises that he himself would point out the way and share the danger.

But let it be observed, that when *moneo* denotes information, and not advice, it is always joined with the infinitive ; as,

He apprised him by a trusty messenger, that it was in agitation to break down the bridge.

In the same manner, *persuadeo*, though generally followed by *ut*, when it signifies *to convince*, is always followed by an infinitive ; as,

I wish you thoroughly to convince yourself, that no one is dearer to me.

Observe also, that the articles of every agreement, or condition of a bargain, are expressed by *ut*.

After verbs denoting a *doubt* or *opinion*, the Latins elegantly use *fore* or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* or *qui*, with the subjunctive, instead of the future of the infinitive ; as,

I doubt not that there will be many who.....

Non dubito fore plerosque, qui.....

EXAMPLES.

1. *I hope that he will return* into your favour.
2. *I do not doubt that many will think* this mode of writing, trifling and insignificant, and altogether unworthy of the characters of those great personages.
3. *I never thought that* a power, which seemed so firmly established, *would so soon fall to the ground.*

This form seems to have been originally made use of in verbs, which wanted a supine, and consequently a future of the infinitive, and to

have been afterwards adopted more universally on account of the elegance of the variation.

After the verbs *to will, to wish, to desire, to suffer*, and after *æquum est, oportet, necesse est, sequitur*, either *ut*, or the accusative with the infinitive may be used indifferently.

EXAMPLES.

1. I *desired* that my father should write.
 2. A man *must* die.
 3. It is *right* this should be done.
 4. Hence *it follows, that* no man can make a great progress in literature without genius.
 5. He *wished* him *to* assemble his forces and to march against the enemy.
-

Actives should be changed into passives, or *quòd* and *ut*, should, if possible, be used where two accusatives with an infinitive might create an ambiguity, which of the two was the case of the infinitive; as *patrem te amare dicunt*: Here it is doubtful, whether you love the father, or the father you. You will therefore say, either *patrem à te amari*, or *à patre te amari*.

Quòd may be used when it implies the cause or reason, of what goes before, when it might easily be changed into *quia*. and after verbs of certain affections, as of *rejoicing, grieving, &c.*

quòd may be safely used, as well as the accusative with the infinitive ; as,

I am glad *that* you are returned safe :

Quòd redieris incolumis, or, te rediisse incolumem, gaudeo.

EXAMPLES.

1. After the troubles of mind and the pains you have endured, I cannot but *rejoice that* you are so well. (*Quòd* here implying the cause or reason, that I rejoice, may be equally used, or the accusative with the infinitive.)

2. I have received letters from home, and am overwhelmed with the deepest sorrow, *that* my father is so ill.

With these few exceptions, however, the accusative with the infinitive, is most frequently used by the ancients.

But the conjunctions *ut* and *quòd* are not to be used indiscriminately : the chief difference seems to be, that when the preceding clause is or ought to be the cause or reason of the following, we should use *ut* ; otherwise the accusative with the infinitive, or sometimes *quòd*.

EXAMPLES.

1. You have often exhorted me *to* make a collection of my epistles, if I should write them with any degree of accuracy. (Here the exhortation is evidently the cause of collecting the epistles.)

2. So many and great favours have you heaped upon me, *that* so far from repaying them, I must live and die conscious of my own ingratitude.

After the comparative, the sign of which is *too, too much*, we must make use of *quàm ut*, with the subjunctive ; as,

He is *too proud* to teach you : *Superbior est, quàm ut te doceat.*

EXAMPLES.

1. His learning and virtue are *too great* to be set forth with advantage by me, and *too well known* every where to need it, unless I would, according to the proverb, show the sun with a lantern.

*2. Cæsar was *too old*, in my opinion, to amuse himself with projecting the conquest of the world. Such an imagination was excusable in Alexander, a prince full of youth and fire, and not easy to be checked in his hopes ; but Cæsar ought to have been more grave.

3. Some boys are *too idle* to learn, and *too contumacious* to obey the precepts of their masters.

The conjunctions *ut ne* joined together are often elegantly used for *ne* ; as,

The first principle of justice is, *that no one* should do an injury to another :

Justitiæ primum munus est, ut ne cui noceas.

EXAMPLES.

1. And do not so far commit yourself, *lest* when you have been supplied with every thing by us, you should appear to have been wanting to yourself.

2. We must also take care *that* we may *not* appear to do this through anger.

3. When you return from abroad, always remember, that the death of your wife, or the illness of your daughter, are common and possible events, in order, *that nothing* may be new and unexpected to you.

The common rule, that when two verbs come together, the second is put in the infinitive, must be restricted within very narrow limits. It is chiefly and only used after certain verbs, as *volo, nolo, cupio, amo, conor, tento, audeo, studeo cogito, possum, nequeo, obliviscor, debet, cæpi, incipio, constituo, soleo, consuevi, cogor, scio, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

1. My father *urged me* to write to him, by the tenderest motives of affection and gratitude. (We should not say *impulit scribere*, but *ad*, or *ut*). *Per amorem et omnia pietatis officia.*

2. Since my parents *wish to* educate me in the liberal arts, I shall do my utmost endeavours to learn many things.

Care must be also taken not to fall into Grecisms, by too rash a use of the infinitive ; as,

He instigated him to ask for this. (Here the infinitive would be wrong.)

He went to the river to wash away the blood.

The same caution must be used after adjectives ; as,

He is a fit person to do that.

My brother is very desirous to learn.

That lesson is very easy to understand.

Quin is used for *ut non*, followed by a subjunctive.

It is impossible that a man of genius and of great industry should not be a learned man.

Often for *quòd non* :

I dare not blame what you have done, not that I do not differ from you in my opinion, but because I know you have acted from the best of motives, and to the best of your judgment.

For *qui non*, in these forms :

There is none, who does not know.

Who is there, who does not believe it ?

Very often for *cur non*, followed by an indicative.

Why do you not fly hither ?

Why do you not arm yourself ?

Why, if we feel the vigor of youth, do we not mount our horses ?

After a negative expression, or even an interrogation, the Latins make use of *nisi*, *quin*, where the English usually has the particle *but*; and sometimes of *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* : as,

They are fit for nothing, *but* to be slaves :

Eos non decet nisi esse servos.

EXAMPLES.

1. There is a time, when the richest women ought to marry; they seldom let slip an opportunity at first, *but* it fills their minds with disappointment and bitter anguish.

2. Among the Epicureans, there is nothing, *but* what a crowd of atoms can perform.

3. Caesar's translation of estates from the rightful owners to strangers, ought not to be accounted liberal; for nothing is liberal, *but* what is, at the same time, just.

4. What is it to recollect one's self, *but* to rally the scattered and disordered parts of the soul into their proper place ?

5. When riches take their flight and forsake us, we should consider, they deprive us of nothing, which was properly and truly our own. If they should slip away from us, they'll take nothing away *but* themselves.

*6. When Romulus was snatched from the people, the senators ruled by turns. Upon this, the commons murmured that their slavery was multiplied, that a hundred lords were

put upon them for one : nor did they any longer seem likely to endure any other *but* a king, and him too of their own making.

The conjunction *quasi* has a subjunctive mood after it ; but it must be observed that it is always used by the ancients with a present, if the preceding verb, or the subject itself be concerning a thing present, though the English has the perfect or imperfect ; and if the subject refers to the past, it is always used with the perfect, though the English has a pluperfect ; as,

You are silent, *as if* you did not know that the thing is so :

Taces, quasi nescias rem ita esse.

EXAMPLES.

1. You are silent concerning this business, *as if* you did not know it.

2. Are you not a foolish fellow, to ask me what I think will be done in this business, *as if* I was acquainted with what he himself does not know ?

3. For he writes in such a manner, *as if* I had been obliged to go to them, and not they to me.

The conjunction *quum*, or *cum*, when implying a reason previously known, or given, and answering to the English *since*, is usually followed by the subjunctive ; and when it is used for *etsi*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *When* I know you are accustomed to read good books, I wonder that you reap so little advantage from them.

2. Things *being* so, or this being the case, I shall say no more.

3. *Since* this is the case, and *as* he loves these studies, let him be indulged.

4. *Though* they pleaded his cause with great eloquence, yet he was condemned to be banished.

The English particle *being*, implying a cause, is variously rendered into Latin : chiefly by *quum*, *cùm*, *quippè qui*, *ut qui*, *ut pote*, *ut pote cùm*, *ut*.

EXAMPLES.

1. He was noted for the wisest person, that had ever been ; *there being* no sort of knowledge, with which his mind was not stored in great abundance.

*2. Music lays us asleep, when we would go to rest ; recreates our spirits, when we are tired with business ; banishes melancholy, when we are oppressed with sorrow ; and augments our pleasure, when we would be merry ; *being* no less fit to wait upon feasts, than they, that attend at the table.

3. He was as much valued and esteemed by the whole party, as any man ; and he deserved it, *being* more accomplished than any of them.

4. This we most earnestly request of you, *as being a thing* so agreeable to equity, that we think we cannot demand a more equitable one.

5. The king honors him greatly, *being* a person in whose fidelity and prudence he can confide.

When a subjunctive goes before in a sentence, conjunctions, which in themselves govern an indicative, or even the simple relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, will generally require the verb following to

be likewise in the subjunctive, if the two verbs are closely connected in the idea ; as,

It is right, that, *when* we are in health, we should think of death :

Æquum est, ut, cùm sani simus, de morte cogitemus.

(Note, That the subjunctive *we should think*, though by transposition it comes in the last clause of the sentence, must be considered in sense as the first subjunctive.)

EXAMPLES.

1. He is so fond of writing, *that* he immediately commits to paper all the undigested thoughts, *which* come into his mind.

2. It often happens *that* those, *whom* we love most, are the soonest snatched away from us.

3. The king commanded *that* those things, *which* were necessary for the war, should be got ready with the utmost haste.

4. *Since* I had been first accosted by those men, *who* said that our troops had met with a terrible reverse of fortune, I could not but believe it.

5. I determined to remain in the country, *that*, *whilst* the season of the year was convenient, I might pursue rural occupations.

And in the same manner, after an accusative, with the infinitive, a verb preceded by those conjunctions, or by the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, will more elegantly be in the subjunctive ; as,

Who will deny that I have performed *what* you enjoined me ?

Quis neget me perfecisse, quod præceperis ?

EXAMPLES

1. I know that my father will soon return, *because* he has not written to us.
 2. It behoves us not to undertake any thing of moment, *before* we have well considered it.
 3. But know, that there are more, *who* refuse to pay the tribute, than those who wish to have it exacted.
-

Observe that the English participle active or verbal in *ing*, in several colloquial or vulgar expressions, is more elegantly rendered by turning the verb into a passive impersonal ; as,

There is no *trusting* to the bank :

Ripæ non bene creditur.

EXAMPLES.

1. *There is no more resisting* uncontrollable folly, than the violent course of a river.
 2. He denies *that there can be any living pleasantly, without living virtuously*. He denies that fortune has any ascendant over a wise man.
 3. These briars and thorns being platted close together, were fences to them ; *into which there was not only no entering, but not even any seeing through*.
 4. He commends the courage and constancy of the senate ; he acquaints them with his forces, that he has ten legions ready ; besides, that he knows, and has found for certain, that Cæsar's soldiers are disaffected to him, and *that there is no persuading them* to defend or follow him.
-

Verbs which cannot be used personally in the passive, must be used impersonally, or with a transposition of the active : as, *He was succeeded by his son, successit ei filius*. It may be observed

that verbs which do not govern an accusative in the active, do not admit of the corresponding person in the passive; as, *I am believed when I speak the truth, mihi verum dicenti creditur.*

EXAMPLES.

1. In your wisest designs *you are resisted* by the rashness of your intemperate and ignorant colleague.

2. Though they just now wished to sound a retreat, they now feel their breasts warmed with the hope of victory, and the general *is cheerfully obeyed* through the whole army.

The English termination in *ing* belongs to both voices, active and passive, and denotes that the action is progressive or imperfect. It refers either to past, present or future.

EXAMPLES.

1. The master *is writing*, but the boys *are playing*.

2. The house *was building*, when the floods suddenly came upon it, and left not a vestige behind.

3. The dinner *will be getting ready*, while the guests *are assembling*.

The English verbal in *ing*, after verbs of *preventing, prohibiting, &c.* is rendered by the subjunctive mood, with the conjunctions, *quin, ne, and quò minùs*; as

I will not hinder you from studying,

Per me non stabit quò minùs studeas.

EXAMPLES.

1. We were not able *to deter* even the Rheni, our brethren and kinsmen in blood, *from consenting with these people.*

2. As our enemies found the means to disturb the former league, so they left nothing neglected, *to hinder the renewing of the same.*

3. *Be not hindered from paying your vow* in due time, nor put it off till death.

4. The winds *hinder* the bees *from carrying* their food home.

5. Why do you *keep me from using* my own.

AS there is some difficulty in the use of PARTICIPLES, they will require to be more particularly considered ; since they contribute greatly to the elegance of style, when judiciously used, and will as much injure it, if adopted too indiscriminately.

In general, as often as the relative, *qui, quæ, quod*, occurs, it may be omitted, and the verb, before which it goes, may be changed into a participle, which must agree in case with its antecedent ; as,

I wish to satisfy my friend, *who desires* what is honorable :

Amico honesta petenti satisfacere volo.

EXAMPLES.

1. By the studying of the liberal arts, a name is often acquired, *which will never perish*.

2. When a bungling cobbler, *who was perishing* with want, had begun to practice medicine in a place, in which he was not known :

3. At length, O Romans, have we driven away, discarded and pursued, with the keenest reproaches, this wretch *who was intoxicated* with fury, *who was breathing* mischief, and *impiously threatening* to lay waste this city with fire and sword.

4. Some shepherds beholding this conflagration, and having collected a band of five hundred, pursued the enemies, *who were dispersed*, and *were ignorant* how great the numbers were, because their own fear and the smoke of the fires had intercepted their view, and having slain nine thousand, put the rest of the plunderers to flight.

To define this more fully, we may say, that when two verbs, or two divisions of a sentence are so closely connected together, that the one is the cause or the antecedent of the other, and both refer to one subject, having the relative *qui*, or the conjunctions *ubi*, *quando*, *dum*, *postquam*, &c. between them, these last are rejected, and the clause, before which they were to be put, is expressed by the participle.

EXAMPLES.

1. And first I will vindicate my present behaviour to Cato, *who governs* his life by the certain rule of reason, and diligently *weighs* the motive of every duty.

It must be observed, that the participle must be put in the case, which the noun or the verb of the other clause governs; as,

When the Roman citizen was fixed to the cross, *his hands* dropped with blood.

Here, *hands* is the substantive, which governs the genitive, and the participle consequently must be put in the genitive. Therefore we should say,

Civis cruci adfixi manus sanguine stillarunt.

2. *When* I think of this circumstance, *it appears* wonderful to me.

Here the verb *videtur* requiring a dative, the participle must be put in the dative, and we should say,

Cogitanti mihi hac de re, permirum videtur.

*3. *While* I considered with myself, and for a long time revolved in my own mind, in what way I could best benefit as many of my fellow citizens as I could, *there occurred* to me none more effectual, than to give them rules and precepts for the attainment of the liberal arts.

4. But *as she did not trust* in his promises, *he sends her word* that he wished to associate her sons into a share of the kingdom, with whom he had carried on the war, not with a view of depriving them of the kingdom, (that he might deprive them,) but that he might bestow it as of his own free gift.

5. *When he entered* the vestibule on the very threshold, Sophonisba, the wife of Syphax and daughter of Asdrubal, *met him*; and having descried Masinissa in the middle of the troop of armed men, conspicuous above the rest for his armour and other habiliments, supposing, as really was the case, that it was the king, she fell at his feet and said, "Both the Gods and your valor and fortune have given you an absolute power over us."

But when two parts or divisions of a sentence have each a separate nominative, and refer to a different subject, the clause, which generally has *dum, cum, quando* or *postquam* with it, if it is rendered by a participle, will be turned into an ablative absolute; or, for the sake of brevity, into some other case dependent on the noun or verb, as in the last examples: as for,

When my father died, we sold his books,

We should say,

Patre mortuo, ejus libros vendidimus:

Or perhaps still more elegantly,

Patris mortui libros vendidimus.

EXAMPLES.

1. But *when* his friends exhorted him to reduce Greece under his power, Darius fitted out a fleet of five hundred ships.

2. But *as, or when*, our men still demurred to leap into the sea, chiefly on account of the depth of the water in those parts, the standard-bearer of the tenth legion, having first invoked the Gods for success, cried aloud, "Follow me, fellow soldiers,

unless you will betray the Roman eagle into the hands of the enemy."

3. They say that *while* the boy was sleeping, his head appeared suddenly in a blaze; and that, *when* the tumult was appeased, the queen forbade the boy to be moved, till he awoke of his own accord.

4. These atrocious crimes were not unpunished. For *while* the Gods pour down their vengeance on so many perjuries, and such bloody parricide, he is himself stript of his kingdom, and being taken in battle, he loses his life by the sword of the enemy.

5. *When* the enemy was thus entangled in the narrow streights, and reduced to extreme necessity, he sent an officer to their camp, to demand that they would surrender themselves.

The force of these two rules may be more clearly and briefly illustrated by these two short examples, in which it is shown, when the ablative absolute may, or may not, be used:

When the sun rises, the moon withdraws her light.

Here are two nominatives to two different divisions of a sentence, the first of which may be rendered by the ablative absolute: and,

When the sun rises, it puts the stars to flight.

Here is only one agent or nominative case referring to two different actions or verbs, which are, however, closely connected together, and consequently, though the first division may be changed into a participle, it must remain in the nominative.

But it is not solely by the rejection of the relative, or of these conjunctions, that participles are to be used; for very often and with greater ele-

gance, a substantive will be changed into a participle; as,

At the sight of my father, I ran away. I received him on his return. (redeuntem.)

Though in this case also, the substantive being thus turned into a verb, and admitting the conjunctions mentioned above, might be referred to the foregoing rules.

EXAMPLES.

1. This officer *from his mistrust* of his own safety, and that of the legion, rushed unarmed out of his tent.

*2. And we shall devote ourselves wholly *to the contemplation and consideration* of these subjects; because, first of all, there is implanted in our minds a certain insatiable desire of discovering the truth; and the more the very skirts of the places, which we have already reached, facilitate our knowledge of heavenly objects, the more do they inspire us with the desire of perfecting that knowledge.

3. If therefore I am under the necessity of arraigning one, I still seem to adhere to the rule which I have proposed to myself, without deviating *from the patronage and defence of men.*

4. For my mind is agitated with many serious and distressing thoughts, which suffer me to take no rest either by day or by night: first the cares and anxieties of my consular office, which, whatever troubles and difficulties it may occasion to others, to me, above all men, cannot but be most burdensome and perplexing. No indulgence would be given *to me in any error*, and the most splendid merit would be recompensed by the small and reluctant voice of praise. *In my doubts*, I could expect no friendly and disinterested advice, *in my labors*, I should receive no effectual assistance from the nobility. (Say, no advice to me doubting, no assistance would be to me laboring.)

After *post* especially the substantive is elegantly changed into a participle : as,

EXAMPLES.

1. *After the building* of the city, many years elapsed before any form of government was settled.

2. *After, or since, the birth or creation of men*, our country has not been desolated, by so long and dreadful a war as the present.



Of two verbs that have a relation to each other, and have a case common to both, instead of being connected by the conjunction *et*, and put in the same mood, the one is elegantly turned into a participle passive and becomes the case of the other, or if the sense requires it, will agree with the nominative case ; as,

He took and killed him. *Captum interfecit.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Some of these *were selected and sent* to consult the Delphic oracle.

2. Besides the conspirators were many, who went to Catiline, in the beginning. Among these was A. Fulvius, the son of the Senator, whom his father *drew back* from his intended journey, *and ordered* to be killed.

3. He made an obstinate resistance, and fought desperately to defend the house in which he was ; but within an hour or two, *he is taken and carried away to prison.*

*4. Other useful and liberal studies appear to me *to have been pursued with the greatest celebrity* by the wise and good men in their leisure and retirement, (*concelebrata*) and *to have derived the greatest splendor and perfection* : (*enituisse*) but this science seems to me *to have been deserted* by the greatest part of them, and *to have fallen into neglect* at a time when it was necessary that it should be encouraged and promoted with more than usual zeal and ardor.

The nominative of the participle present active is very inelegant, and is better rendered by a periphrasis with a conjunction; and where two verbs come together joined by the conjunction, *and*, if the first is of the past time, it may be turned elegantly into the participle of a verb deponent; as,

*He kissed me and forbade me to cry :
Me osculatus vetuit flere.*

EXAMPLES.

*1. *He then complained bitterly* of their inactivity, *and informed* them he had sent Manlius forward to that multitude whom he had instructed to take up arms; and had dispatched others to convenient places, to make a beginning of the war, and that he himself wished to take his departure for the army, if he could first dispatch Cicero, who stood very much in the way of his design.

2. A very few, trusting to their strength, swam over; all the rest, our horse *overtook and slew*.

3. *He promised* better things of himself for the future, and then *he raised* his eyes to Heaven, and invoked the protection of the Gods.

4. *He thought* that he could easily escape out of their hands, *and suddenly rushed* through the thickest of the enemies, but he soon fell to the ground pierced with a thousand weapons.

After the verbs *malo, volo, nolo, curo*, &c. participles passive agreeing with their case are more elegant than the present of the infinitive active; as,

I'll take care to find you, and bring your Pamphilus with me :

Inventum tibi curabo et mecum adductum tuum Pamphilum.

EXAMPLE.

1. We beg this one thing of you, that, if out of your clemency *you have determined to save us*, you would not strip us of our arms.

2. But there is also something, of which I should *wish to advise you* in a few words.

3. He *wishes* now more than ever that *his son should die*.

4. The tyrant *would* not wish to *free him* from his anguish.

5. In obedience to the orders of the King, he *took care to provide* all things necessary for the expedition.

6. He ordered that *he should take care to slay him*, under pretence of holding a conference with him.

The participle future passive, with the dative of the person, is more elegant than the verbs *debeo, oportet, necesse est*; as

Diogenes being asked at what age a man ought to marry, said, *young men* not yet, *old men* never:

Diogenes interrogatus quâ ætate ducenda sit uxor; juvenibus, inquit, nondum, senibus nunquam.

EXAMPLES.

1. There is nothing, which old age *ought to guard against* so much, as sinking into languor and inactivity.

2. We *must* not only acquire wisdom, but we *should exercise* it for the good and advantage of mankind.

The gerund in *do* is often elegantly used, with the omission of the adjectives signifying convenience, &c. as *Par, idoneus, &c.* as,

He is equal to paying; Est solvendo.

EXAMPLES.

1. Farmers should take care what seed they put in the earth : for old and worn-out seed is not *fit for sowing*.
 2. Brown or pack paper is not *fit for writing*.
 3. I know not whether I ever saw a stronger man ; he is *equal to bearing* any weight.
-

The gerund followed by a substantive is elegantly changed into the participle future passive, and agrees with that substantive in gender, number, and case : but only in those verbs that govern an accusative ; as,

I shall ease all my regret *by sending and receiving* letters :

Omne desiderium literis mittendis accipiendis-que leniam.

EXAMPLES.

1. In all my distresses and difficulties it has always afforded me a heartfelt satisfaction to behold your alacrity and readiness *in defending my cause*.
 2. I have always been the foremost *in defending your liberty*. (*Princeps* with a genitive.)
 3. What can be more difficult than, *in determining the differences* of adverse parties, to acquire the good will of all ?
 4. We are by nature prone *to love* virtue, and *to detest* vice.
-

A finite verb, or a verb, which determines the sense, or the action, is often changed into the participle future passive, with or without *esse*, where the subject depends upon the will or the judgment of the agent, and the verbs *puto*, *arbitror*, *existimo*, *credo*, *censeo*, *judico*, *statuo*, *duco*,

videor or *video*, *curo*, &c. are added ; as *scribendum putavi*, for *scripsi* ; but care must be taken, that the choice of these verbs be appropriate to the sense, as we should not say, that a man *morendum putavit* for *mortuus est*, as not depending upon his will.

EXAMPLES.

1. Cæsar, seeming sufficiently to understand the minds of his soldiers, *tried*, (*or thought fit to try*,) what intention or inclination Pompey had to fight.

2. When the Temple of Janus was shut, and he had by means of treaties and alliances conciliated the good will of all the neighbouring states, and thus removed the dread of foreign dangers, lest the minds of his subjects, whom the fear of the enemy, and a strict military discipline, had hitherto kept under restraint, should become enervated by luxurious ease, *he instilled into them the fear* of the Gods, which he thought the most efficacious method to restrain a multitude in that age so rude and uncivilized.

3. What so popular as peace ? which methinks brightens not only those beings, to whom nature has imparted animal sense, but the very houses and fields with the smile of joy ; what so popular as liberty ? which you see not only men, but the very beasts of the fields longing after, and even preferring to every thing else ; what so popular as ease ? which is so gratifying, that every man distinguished for his bravery will gladly *undergo the greatest toils and difficulties*, that he may one day live at ease, especially if accompanied with power and dignity.

*4. No avaricious views diverted him into the pursuit of plunder ; no criminal passion seduced him into pleasure ; the charms of a country provoked not his delight ; the reputation of a city excited not his curiosity ; nor could even labour itself sooth him into a desire of repose. In short, he *did not so much as visit those paintings, statues, and other ornaments of the Greek cities, which the other Generals carried off at pleasure*.

5. I wish to explain more at large, in this assembly of

learned men, that discipline which Petronius has lightly touched upon, especially as in the examination of it, I may be able to exhibit and explain that plan and method of doctrine which *I myself pursue*.

6. *The wisest men have drawn* from these sources, that is from Greek and Latin, every improvement of human genius, all true and solid learning, every precept of true wisdom and prudence, and what is of much greater consequence, the best examples for the formation and direction of a good life (*bene instituendæ vitæ*.)

A participle passive is often elegantly joined to a verb as antecedent to it, and put into the neuter gender, being made to agree with the sentence, though either of the two verbs would have been sufficient, as, *Quum relatum legerint*.

A similar mode is very frequently adopted with the verb *habeo*, when the English word *to have* refers not merely to the perfect but to the present; as,

We have found or discovered that the sun stands still:

Compertum habemus solem consistere.

EXAMPLES.

1. We have *received it from tradition*, (or we have *received it as delivered from antiquity*.)

2. I *comprehend in my mind*, (or I *hold it comprehended in my mind*.)

3. You could scarcely mention any thing which he did not know: for as we mark with letters, whatever we wish to commit to a lasting monument, so *he had engraven* all things on his mind.

The participle future active should be used,

instead of the verbs *cupio*, *volo*, and *statuo*, with the omission of the conjunctions *cum* and *si*, when they merely imply something future; as,

If you intend to set out on your journey, shake off your sleep :

Iter initurus eripe te somno.

EXAMPLES.

1. *When you wish to write verses*, read Virgil, and thus his manner may, by degrees, be imperceptibly transfused into your poetry.

2. *When I was thinking of writing this letter to you*, intelligence was brought to me, that you were gone into Italy.

All verbs signifying motion to a place, may be variously rendered: either by a supine, a gerund, or by *ut* with the subjunctive; but with greater elegance by the participle future active; as,

He came to snatch away the boy :

Venit ut eriperet puerum ;

Venit, ereptum puerum ;

Venit, eripiendi puerum causâ ; or *ad eripendum puerum :*

But more elegantly,

Venit erepturus puerum.

EXAMPLES.

*1. He was so harrassed by remorse, and driven to despair by the stings of an evil conscience, that he retired into the deepest recess of a wood, to kill himself by his own sword, but when he thought he had collected sufficient resolution, and was already on the point of plunging the steel into his own breast, his courage failed him, and he returned home without accomplishing his purpose.

2. I am come to extricate you from all your difficulties.

3. He retired into the temple, *to implore* the favour of the Gods, *and to consult* the oracle, but a band of ruffians, unmindful of the sacred place in which so foul a deed would be perpetrated; rushed upon him and slew him before the altar.

One or two more words in a sentence are elegantly placed between the participle and the verb *sum*, which, in that case, generally comes first.

EXAMPLES.

1. I think I shall not be very far from the truth, in asserting, that among all those, *who have been employed* in the most liberal studies of the arts and sciences, there have existed a very small number of excellent poets.

2. I had not the least doubt, that many messengers, and report itself, *would*, by its rapidity, *anticipate* this letter.

*3. But those, whose grovelling souls are fixed upon the earth, whose whole thoughts are bent on worldly and perishable objects, those men we see depart from life with manifest repugnance and difficulty. And not without a reason. For having a nearer view of the immortality of their souls, they already feel unspeakable torments, as if eternal punishment *was on the eve of overtaking a life* spent in the commission of enormous crimes.

OF TENSES.

IN a continued narration, which is intended to represent circumstances as if they were present to the eye, the present indicative is more in use, than the perfect.

EXAMPLES.

1. The Commander, observing the general consternation, *called* a council of war, and having summoned all the Centurions of the army to be present, *inveighed* against them, with great severity, for presuming to enquire, or at all concern themselves, which way, or on what design, they were to march.

2. A few days after, Ennius having come to Nasica, and asking for him at the door, Nasica *cried out* that he was not at home.

It is usual with the Latins, in a narration, to make use of the present infinitive instead of the indicative, with the ellipsis of *cæpi*, or of some other verb; this is called the historic infinitive; as in that line of Virgil:

*Nos pavidî trepidare metu, crinemque flagrantem
Excitere.*

EXAMPLES.

1. In the mean while, both knights, patricians and consuls, *were precipitating* fast into slavery. Those chiefly, who were distinguished by their dignity and eminence, assumed the mask of hypocrisy; put on a hurried step, and displayed reserve and

composure in their countenances, and from a dread of manifesting at first too great an excess either of joy or sorrow, at the decease of the Prince, they took care to blend equally together their tears and joy, their adulation and complaints.

*2. The Vineæ were worked, and drawn up, with the greatest danger, and to no purpose; for as soon as they had brought them reasonably close, the fire and stones that poured upon them soon destroyed and rendered them useless. The soldiers *could neither stand* before their works, on account of the inequality of the ground, *nor be of any service* among the Vineæ, without the most imminent danger. The bravest of the troops *were either slain or wounded*, and the rest *were struck with an irresistible panic*.

3. Then all in the assembly *exclaimed* that the country was in danger, and that the enemies were already at the gates; they then suddenly *rushed forth*, determined either to conquer, or to die bravely for their country.

4. The man being struck with the fear of impending danger, *faultered, hesitated, and blushed*.

Where the subject is general, and the word *man* is either expressed or understood, the passive is not always used, but it is as elegant to put the second person singular of the subjunctive, or the infinitive, with the verb *est* or *licet*; as,

A man may easily understand what use is to be derived from literature:

Animadvertere est, quanta ex re literariâ quæri possit utilitas.

EXAMPLES.

1. 2d. PERSON PRES. SUB.—In every business, before *men* undertake any thing of moment, *they* should first deliberate, and use the utmost caution.

2. What *is promised* with an oath, as if God were a witness, must be inviolably kept.

3. INFIN. with *Est* or *Licet*.—*Men are seen* every where covetous of money.

4. *Men are often seen*, not so much from a natural benevolence, as from a desire of appearing generous, doing actions, which seem to proceed rather from ostentation than good will.

5. *This may be seen* in our other senses, that we are not so long delighted with perfumes of a very high and sweet savour, as with those that are more moderate.

In the epistolary style, instead of the present tenses, the past tenses are often used; most frequently the imperfect. The writer seems to consider the time of the letter's being read, not of its being written, as the moment of narration: as, *I am ill*: the letter writer should say, *Ægrotabam*, because his illness may have left him before the letter is received. A future is rendered by the participle future, with the imperfect of the verb *sum*.

EXAMPLES.

1. There *is* (say. *was*) a report, that you have succeeded in your enterprize.

2. *I am thinking of setting off* to-morrow. (Participle future with imperfect of *sum*.)

3. If there shall be a long interval between my letters, *do not wonder at it*; (perfect subjunctive,) for *I shall be absent* o r a whole month.

4. *I write* this on the twelfth of June, and *send it* by the letter-carrier.

There is some difficulty in the use of the future perfect, owing to the incorrectness of the

English, which generally uses the simple present future, or perfect, where it ought to have a future perfect. It generally follows these particles, *cùm, ubi, si, quando*, and is used when the verb, that accompanies it, is in the future imperfect, and itself denotes a future action absolutely completed; as,

When he comes, we shall sing.

Cùm venerit ille, canemus.

EXAMPLES.

1. *When your father comes*, I shall tell him what progress you have made in your learning.

2. *When you have sent me that book*, I shall give it to my father."

3. *If you do this*, I shall be highly indebted to you.

4. *Whatever you resolve*, will please me.

5. *To-morrow if the enemy go out of their camp*, to forage and lay waste the neighbouring country, I shall give orders for a chosen troop to sally forth, and if possible, to take the foraging party in the rear, and cut them off from their main army.

6. *And if I show*, as fully as I am able, that there is no solid doctrine or useful art, worthy the cultivation of a liberal mind, which the Greeks have not either invented, or of which they have not as it were most abundantly scattered the seeds in all parts of the world; and *if I prove* at the same time by the most convincing reasons that it was they who from the depth of darkness not only brought to light and cultivated the noblest sciences, but also carried them to such a height of perfection as almost to take away from us every hope of following or imitating them; what youth *will not feel his breast glow* with the warmest zeal towards that learned nation, and attachment to it?

This tense is by some grammarians very cr-

roniously called a future subjunctive. The Latins invariably use the participle future, and the verb *sum*, to form a future subjunctive; as, I do not doubt but he will prove a learned man: *Non dubito, quin evasurus sit doctus*. When verbs have no supine, and consequently want a participle future, they employ the periphrasis *fore ut*, as we have already observed; as, I hope he will learn; *spero, fore ut discat*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Such is his skill, bravery, and knowledge of the military art *that he will* without doubt *extricate himself* from that danger.

2. He will use so many arts, *that he will corrupt* my son.

3. I think *that*, if misers bury their treasures in a chest, not only their thoughts but their bodies *will* always *hang over* that chest.

And often where the English has a future, the Latins, speaking with greater accuracy, make use of a present, when the matter relates to a thing present.

EXAMPLES.

1. Who *will deny* this? I am so far from invalidating the force of this argument, that I wish to pay all possible respect to so high an authority.

2. Every one *will easily understand*, that the whole of my discourse tends to confute so erroneous an opinion.

The Latins often very elegantly use the preterperfect subjunctive, instead of the present.

EXAMPLES

1. *Some one may say*, that virtue is its own reward ; but few men will be induced to love virtue for its own sake, if they are not at the same time impelled by other more powerful reasons.

2. *You may object to this*, that man is born to labor, and therefore he cannot expect a life of repose.

The present subjunctive of the verbs *volo, malo, nolo, possum*, is often used for the imperfect, as is the case with other verbs, when there is an interrogation.

EXAMPLES.

1. *I would rather* please you and Brutus.

2. If he must be sent for, which *I should by no means wish* he cannot but be struck with astonishment, at this unheard of prodigy.

3. Who *could not understand* a thing so intelligible ?

4. Who *could believe*, that you, who are already so much advanced in years, should think of marriage ?

Concerning the SUCCESSION OF TENSES to each other, as far as it varies from the English, as it is often attended with some difficulty, it may be observed, that after *ut, ne, quò, quo minùs, quin, qui, quæ, quod, quis*, and other particles, that govern the subjunctive, if a present or future goes before, it is right to use the present ; if an imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect, then the imperfect follows : as, he will be worthy to be loved : *dignus erit, qui ametur* : he was worthy to be loved : *dignus erat qui amaretur*.

tur. But it will be necessary to pay strict regard to the nature of the tenses, and the sense of the subject; hence some exceptions may sometimes occur.

A PRESENT after a PRESENT.—When speaking of things present.

EXAMPLES.

1. He *fights*, as if he *contended* for his life.
2. You tell me that your destiny is placed in my own hands, as if *it were possible*, that I *should obtain* this boon. (Here it would be wrong to say *consequer*, because *feri possit* goes before, though the English might seem to authorize it.)
3. I do not think, that *there are* any men, *who would not wish* to be informed of the fate of their absent friends.
- *4. Do you imagine that *we could be supplied with sufficient materials*, so that *we could plead* every day on such a variety of subjects, if our mind were not cultivated with science; or that it *could bear being stretched to such a degree*, if it *were not sometimes unbent* by the amusement of learning.
5. You write me word, that *men are struck* with amazement, how I *should dare* to do that, because it is not credible that a man in his senses, could undertake so hazardous an enterprise.

But these will be excepted:

A perfect must come after the present, if speaking of a circumstance that is past; and a future, if speaking of the future.

EXAMPLES.

1. You are *now afraid*, as if you *had* not at all *been present*, as if you yourself *had not obtained* that wealth unjustly.

2. *Is it not very necessary*, that a man *should learn*, (should have learnt) many things, before he ventures to instruct others ? (Here it would be very improper to say, *ut discat*.)

3. How rash and impious are those men, who, in the hour of despair, often *wish*, that they *had never been born*.

4. *It is to be hoped*, that that report of the murder of our friend *was false*.

5. *It is not possible*, that an indolent man *can ever acquire* dignity. (A future.)

6. I *fear* lest my father *should return* before that can be done.

7. I *am* not a man, who never *is to die*.

8. *Tell* me, when your father *comes*.

In like manner, an imperfect, or a pluperfect, must come after a present, in such forms as these :

1. *Tell* me what you *would do*.

2. *Tell* me, whether you *would have come*, &c.

3. I *wish* that you *had avoided* those associates.

In a succession of three verbs, where the principal verb is in the preterite, and the two following denote a future, that which comes after the future infinitive, and implies an event then completed, will be elegantly put in the pluperfect potential : as, he *promised* that he *would do* it, when *they returned*. *Se id facturum esse, cum rediissent, pollicitus est*.

EXAMPLES.

1. O the memorable voice of that youth, who having shaken off the chains of idleness, and removed far away every al-

lurement to pleasure, *declared* that he *would follow* that mode of life, which his parents *advised*.

2. *He said*, that he *should cease* to be the master of the ship, if his favorite mates *did not embark* with him.

3. But he refused to leave the ship. *He said*, that he *would perish*, when his beloved riches *were sunk*.

4. *He answered*, that he *would preserve* the state, if *they surrendered* before the battering engines reached the wall, but there could be no other condition of their surrender, than to deliver up their arms; and that whatever *he did* in the case of his other enemies, (*in aliis hostibus*) *he would do* in their case.

But when the principal verb is not in the preterite, then the other verb which comes after the future infinitive, will be usually put in the future perfect: as, *know* that you *will do* me a great kindness, *if you come*. *Scias, pergratum te mihi facturum, si veneris*.

EXAMPLE.

They say, that *they will leave off* childish plays, when *they are become* great boys.

A PRESENT after a FUTURE.—Generally after *ut, ne, quò, quin*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Whoever *will persuade* me to utter a falsehood, *will at last force* me to consider him, as an impudent wretch.

2. If I do any thing, I shall inform you of it, nor *shall I ever send* letters home, *without adding those* which I wish to be delivered to you. (Not *adjuncturus sim*.)

And always after *qui, quæ, quod*, in these expressions:

1. There *will be* some, who *will say*.....

2. There *will be* found some, who *will affirm*....

3. But be well assured, that I *shall certainly do* what I know you *will wish* me to do.

And after these particles, *ubi, quis, quid, quando, cur, &c.* when the idea of a thing present may be inferred ; as,

1. I *shall see* to-morrow *what you do*, and in what kind of house *you dwell*.

2. I *shall soon be able* to tell you, whence *it comes*, that you give me so much displeasure.

But other tenses will also come after a future, if the sense require it, as a perfect after the future.

1. If my father does not return to-morrow, I *shall fear* that *he is killed* by robbers.

2. Some one *will complain* perhaps, of *your being* so long with us, without any advantage.

And also a future after a future ; as

1. If your father does not soon return, I *shall fear* that *he may not return* for many months.

AN IMPERFECT after the IMPERFECT.—And it may be observed, that though a pluperfect, if the sense require it, sometimes comes after an imperfect ; neither a present, nor a perfect, nor a future, should ever be placed after it.

EXAMPLES.

1. The house *shone*, as if *it had been* of gold.

2. I have received your letters, which *informed* me what

you employed yourself in, and when I should see you. (*Visurus essem.*)

3. Though these things seemed to surpass my belief, yet when I received your letters, I *did not entertain the least doubt*, but that things *were* in that situation.

4. I *should wish* indeed *never to have seen* that wicked wretch. (A pluperfect.)

AN IMPERFECT after a PERFECT, especially after *Ut* : After verbs of *wishing, asking, advising, persuading, permitting*, after *necesse fuit, æquum fuit*, and other verbs, that require the conjunction *ut* after them ; and after *sic, talis, tam, ita, tantus, quin, qui, ne, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Your father *took care to be thought* rich.

2. Though I spoke the truth, being once detected in a lie, I *could not persuade men to believe me*.

3. Pompey by his actions, *obtained the name of Great.*—(*Assecutus est ut.*)

4. I *have been prevented* by that circumstance, *from being able* to perform this business so soon.

5. I *never entertained the least doubt*, but I *am*, (or *was*) very dear to you.

6. And when he could clearly distinguish the threatening aspect, and heard the menacing words of the approaching, and enraged multitude, and he wanted the courage to fall upon his own sword, a friend *was found to dispatch him.* (*Qui.*)

Let it be observed that when the action is implied as fully completed, the pluperfect is elegantly used.

EXAMPLES.

1. He *forbade* him to come into school till his hands and face *were washed*, and his head *combed*.

2. He *would* not *suffer* him to depart, till the business *was finished*.

There will also occur many exceptions to this: the perfect must sometimes be used after a perfect, as,

1. He *engaged* in so narrow a strait, that the whole line of his ships *could* not be extended.

2. *So far was he from betraying* the insolence of triumph, that he *even pitied* the fortunes of his fallen enemy.

And if the sense require it, a present or a future will also be found after a perfect; as,

1. This man *has learned* so little, that *he can now* scarcely read.

2. You *have been the cause* by your own perfidy, that no one *will* for the future, *repose any confidence* in me.

An imperfect is also used after the pluperfect, subject to some exceptions, which the sense will easily point out.

EXAMPLES.

1. If you had delivered this message to him, nothing *would have prevented him* from coming to us.

2. If you *had persuaded him* to pursue those measures, he certainly would have followed your advice.

As to the succession of tenses in the infinitive mood, concerning which such various opinions

have been given by grammarians, it must be observed, that, though it may be assumed with Sanctius and others, that the infinitive is often very indeterminate in its tenses, since we say *volo legere*, and *volui legere*, and Terence says, *cras mihi argentum dare se dixit*, and Virgil, *Progeniem sed enim Trojano a sanguine duci audierat*, yet we may safely give it as a general rule, that the tense of the verb, which is used in the infinitive, must be determined by the time of its action, or state, relatively to the former verb. Thus when Cicero says, *vidi enim, (nam tu aberas) nostros inimicos cupere bellum: cupere* is present in relation to the time when he saw that they wished for war, and therefore it is put in the present, and cannot be said, as some grammarians would affirm, to be used for *cupivisse*. Had it been *cupivisse*, it would have had a reference to that wish of the enemy, as existing prior to the *vidi*, which is a sense not intended to be conveyed. *Sed abunde erit ex iis duo exempla retulisse.* The circumstance of having produced these two examples, is antecedent in time to the former verb: it would therefore not have been so correct, and quite a different meaning, to have said *referre*.

EXAMPLES.

1. On that day there was much speaking on our side, and my words *seemed to make* a strong *impression* on the senate.
2. *I knew* there *had existed* men of the first celebrity for learning and wisdom in the state.
3. When *he heard* that the enemy *had declared* war, and *understood* at the same time that *they ravaged* the neighbouring states.

4. The wisest philosophers *maintained* that there *was* only one God.

5. He then takes a magnificent view of himself, and *derives* delight and no small advantage from *storing* his memory with an immense mass of names and deeds, and *acquiring* a variety of erudition ; and though he does not himself neglect true learning, yet he *determines* this *to be* the most solid advantage of history, in contemplating the splendid and immortal genius of great men, to *form* his own mind and that of his pupils, by their eminent virtues, and thus to receive the assistance of their wisdom and prudence, rather than of mere erudition.

CHAPTER II.

OF THE ORDER OR ARRANGEMENT OF WORDS.

Felicissimus sermo est, cui et rectus ordo, et apta junctura, et cum his numerus opportunè cadens contingit.—*Quint.*

AS these three requisites, order or arrangement, connexion and harmony, seem to be pointed out by Quintilian, as necessary to form an elegant style, we shall offer some observations upon each.

The order or arrangement of words is either fixed or arbitrary; that is, words must either retain the same invariable order, which the ancients have assigned them, or will chiefly depend upon the natural succession of our ideas.

These words, for instance, are always placed in the beginning of a sentence, *nam, at, verùm, sed, quare, quamobrem, and si, nisi, etsi, quamquam, quia, quoniam, cum*; except in few cases, where, if these words occur, they will claim the first place, as, *qui nisi, quòd si, qui quia, tu si, &c.*

On the contrary, *enim, verò, autem, quoque, quidem*, are always used after one or two, but generally after the first word of a sentence.

EXAMPLES.

*1. *For* I much fear that nature, in giving us weak and infirm bodies, and subjecting them to incurable diseases and insufferable pains, has also given us minds both ready to sympathise with the pains of the bodies, and often tormented with their own separate anguish and disquietude.

2. *But* we both magnify future evils, by our dread of them, and aggravate present calamities, by our unavailing sorrows, and choose rather to throw the blame on the nature of things, than on our own errors.

3. Philosophy *indeed* is so far from meeting with the just commendation, which its benefits to mankind deserve, that by most men it is utterly neglected, and by many it is openly condemned.

Etenim, itaque, ergò, denique, tandem, are used either as the first or second words.

EXAMPLES.

1. A debauched and intemperate young man will *undoubtedly*, if he live, transmit weakness and infirmities to his latter days.

2. Let us *then* suffer ourselves to be exercised and perhaps cured by this wholesome discipline.

Ne quidem are elegantly separated by one or more words coming between them, generally by that or those words, on which the stress of the restriction is laid; as,

He is offended *not even* at the smallest trifle ;
Ne minimâ quidem re offenditur.

EXAMPLES.

1. For my part I *do not think*, that the knowledge of futurity would *even* be attended with any utility to us. How miserable, for instance, would have been the life of Priam, if he had known from his youth the calamities, which were to befall him in his old age.

2. So far are you from having perused all those books, that you have *not even* read one.

3. The poor are sometimes so destitute of necessities, that they have *not even enough* to clothe themselves.

4. Hence it follows, that if one body is not driven by another, they *cannot even touch* one another.

The parts of a compounded word may be elegantly divided by some other word coming between the parts ; as *rem verò publicam amisimus*.

EXAMPLES.

1. You will do *me a very great favor*, if you will give me an opportunity of showing the high regard, I entertain for you ; as I wish, by every means in my power, to *satisfy* our love and friendship.

*2. To a reliance on the divine goodness, this must be added, that we should acquiesce in the divine will, and bear with patience whatever accidents may befall us, *whatsoever* they may appear to human nature.

3. Since *you postpone* all things to silver.

Nullus and *nunquam* are elegantly divided, principally when coming with the conjunctions *et*, *nec* or *neque* ; as,

Any evil can *never* happen to a good man.
Nec enim unquam bono quidquam mali evenit.

EXAMPLES.

1. There is *nothing* which I desire more than to speak to you; for I have *no* leisure to write to you, and *no* messenger ever comes near me.

*2. I confess that the consciousness of right intentions is the greatest comfort in any accident that may befall us, and that there is *no* greater evil than the persuasion that it is our own fault.

When two words are joined together by a conjunction, some other word, having a reference to them, will be elegantly placed between them; as,
A rural and rustic voice delights some men:
Rustica vox et agrestis quosdam delectat.

EXAMPLES.

1. See the *levity* and the *inconstancy* of men.

2. O Brutus, we are attempting quite a *difficult and arduous task*; but nothing is difficult to a lover; and I love and have always loved your genius, your pursuits, and your principles.

Antè, priùs, post, and postè, are elegantly separated from *quàm*; as,

I shall sooner forget my own name, *than* the benefits which you have conferred upon me:

Nomen meum priùs obliviscar, quàm quæ apud me collocasti beneficia.

EXAMPLES.

1. You know, that at a certain time I went to Metapontus with you, and that *I never retired* to my host *before* I had

seen the very place and the house, where Pythagoras had spent his life.

2. I shall answer, that Cæsar, if I know him well, *will consult* your honour, *before* his own interest.

3. It becomes a wise man *to try* every thing by words and persuasion, *before* he has recourse to arms.

Quàm placed between two words, may be more elegantly put before the comparative; as *Amicitia quàm pecunia delectat ampliùs*: Except when it comes with *magis* and *potiùs*, which it should immediately follow.

EXAMPLES.

*1. It is very unpleasant for a prudent man to ask a great favor of one, whom he thinks he has obliged, for fear of appearing to demand, *rather than* to beg, and to place it to the account of a recompense, *rather than* of a favor.

2. Hence friendship seems to originate from nature, *rather than* from weakness.

3. *More* people study to obtain riches *than* virtue.

4. Good men are always *more* suspected by tyrants *than* bad men: for virtue is always very formidable to them.

5. Though Themistocles is justly celebrated, and his name *more* illustrious *than* Solon's, yet virtue and wisdom, though not dazzling, are more beneficial to mankind.

6. For guilt in point of time, *goes before* punishment, (*prior*) and to be reformed *grows out of*, or, is *posterior* to abuses. (*Peccare.*)

When the English word *the other*, or *another*, is rendered by a repetition of the same substantive, to which it refers, or two words occur in the

same sentence, one of which is derived from the other, they must closely follow one another ; as,

One love is expelled by *another*, as one spike is removed by *the other* :

Amore amor, ut clavis clavo, truditur.

As also two words having a contrary signification, if they are opposed to each other, give greater elegance to the sentence, if no other word intervenes between them, as thus their opposition becomes more evident ; as,

They, who wish to appear *learned* in the sight of *fools*, appear *fools* in the sight of the *learned*.

Qui stultis eruditi videri volunt, stulti eruditis videntur.

EXAMPLES.

1. One wedge drives in *the other*.
2. One hand washes *the other*.
3. The *rashness* of the son verified the *wise* saying of the father.
4. For how is it, that *old age* creeps upon *youth*, faster than *youth* on *childhood* ?
5. *Friends* take the greatest delight in the society of *friends*.
6. That is called a civic crown which a *citizen* presents to the *citizen*, by whom he has been preserved, as a pledge of his safety and of the preservation of his life.
7. You covet *money* and reject *virtue*.
8. Despair and necessity render even the *timid brave*.
9. Socrates used to exhort young men to view themselves often in a glass, that, if they were handsome, they might render themselves worthy of that beauty, and if *deformed*, they might skreen and qualify that *deformity* by learning.
10. It was neither in his pride or his wealth, that the *noble* claimed a superiority over the *ignoble*, but in his good name and brave exploits.

11. *In my absence*, I cherished and enjoyed the recollection of my *absent* friend, in the same manner as *in his presence* I had been accustomed to enjoy his familiar converse. (*præsens præsens.*)

12. You went *poor* into your province, you returned *rich* to Rome.

When, for the sake of brevity and elegance, *alius*, *alius*, or *diversi*, *diversi*, each in their proper cases, are used for *one man this*, and *another man that*; *different people this*; and *different people that*; as, one man says *this*, another *that*, *Alius aliud dicit*; they must closely follow each other. And so, *alius aliò*, or *aliorsum*, for *one man to one place*, *another to a different place*; and *alius, aliundè*, for *one man on this side*, *the other on that side*.

EXAMPLES.

*1. Nor indeed did he think that he could find in one body all the qualities which he sought to constitute beauty; because there is nothing in its simple and individual kind, which nature has polished and made perfect in every part; therefore, as if she was not likely to find what to bestow on the rest, if she granted every thing to one, she dispensed *one advantage to one*, and *another to another*, with the mixture of some disadvantage.

2. *One* patron has defended my cause with much more zeal *than the other*.

3. They were disputing across the river, *one on this side*, *the other on that side*.

4. When war was declared, the king sent *one army to one place*, and *another to another*, hoping that he would surprize

the enemy, and defeat their designs; but as *one* historian relates *one thing*, *another another*, it is difficult to determine what credit is to be given to them.

Alius, alius, signifying *some*, and *other*, will be separated, and if we speak of only two, the adjective *alter* will be used, instead of *alius*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Some* men we see, who excel in swiftness for the course, and *others* in strength and vigor for wrestling.
 2. *One* of whom has betrayed the troop, and *the other* has sold them.
-

The pronoun *quisque* is generally placed after *suus, sibi, se*, and when it is joined to superlatives and comparatives, as it were a substantive with its adjective, or coming with numeral and cardinal nouns, it should always be placed after them; as,

Suum cuique pulchrum est.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Every man* loves *his own* verses best.
2. Such is the alarming situation of affairs, that *every man* dreads *his own* destiny.
3. *Every seventh* day is dedicated to sacred purposes.
4. *Every good* scholar thinks so. (*Optimus.*)
- *5 Do not imagine, as you often read in fables, that those, who have been guilty of impiety or wickedness, are terrified and tormented by the burning torches of the furies. *Every man's own* wicked fraud, and consequent terror are his chief

tormentors ; *every man's own* iniquity harrasses and drives him to madness ; his own wicked thoughts and remorse of conscience terrify him. These are the constant and domestic furies that attend the wicked ! which night and day inflict on the polluted offspring the punishments due to the crimes of the parents !

6. *The more virtuous a man is*, with more difficulty is he led to suspect others of being dishonest.

7. *The more learned any one is*, the greater pains he takes in teaching.

On the contrary, the possessive pronouns *meus*, *suus*, &c. are generally placed after their substantives, as *pater meus* ; except when an adjective or a preposition is added to the substantive, and then the possessive is usually placed first.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Our love towards* you is very conspicuous.

2. I only beg of you, that you will substitute me in the place of Hirtius, both on account of *your love for me*, and *my respect for you*. (Though, as Quintilian remarks, there is no great certainty in these exceptions, as they depend wholly upon the perspicuity and harmony of the sentence.)

Observe, likewise, that a pronoun primitive is elegantly placed between the pronoun possessive, and the substantive, with which it agrees ; as,

Your labor is profitable to me.

Tuus mihi labor prodest.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Our studies delight him* greatly.

2. *Your* letters were brought *me* at a time when I could not but receive the greatest comfort from them : for *your* intimacy is by no means displeasing *to me*.

3. Some news have been brought, which affected *me* more on *your* account, than on *mine*.

Though adjectives should, in general, be placed before their substantives, yet comparatives and superlatives, nouns of number, these adjectives, *omnis, nullus, alienum, aliud, alterum, utrumque, solum, ullum, tale, quodvis, quodlibet, totum, singula, cætera, reliqua, multa*, are more elegantly placed after their substantives.

EXAMPLES.

1. But we are impelled to learn, *by a fairer hope*, and *greater rewards*.

2. He was invested with the *most honorable offices* and the *most important employments*.

3. *All the merit* of virtue consists in action ; in which, however, there is often some intermission.

4. He has comprised in one book the history of *seven hundred years*.

5. He has already reigned *twenty-three years* since that time.

6. We often see, that shame gets the better of those, whom *no reason* could overcome.

7. The management of *other people's business* is very difficult, and often thankless.

Nouns of dignity, profession, praise, contempt, are generally placed before the proper names, to which they belong.

EXAMPLES

1. You see before your eyes *Catiline that most audacious man*.

2. *Lucius Cotta, a man of excellent understanding and exemplary prudence*.

3. We are here warring against *Anthony our colleague*, the most infamous of all gladiators.

Observe that the proper name agrees more elegantly by apposition with the person or personal pronoun, than with the common name; as, *Whose name is Iulus, Cui nomen Iulo*.

EXAMPLES.

Ataulphus, after the birth of a son, *to whom* he gave the name of *Theodosius*, seemed to feel a greater regard for the Romans.

If there are several pronouns in a sentence, they are elegantly placed together, if it can be done without causing any confusion or ambiguity to the sense; and, indeed, the best writers, in order to give more force and energy, either to a primitive or a demonstrative pronoun, join several of them to the very same substantive; as,

I come from *your* brother; *he* commends *himself* to you.

Venio à fratre tuo, is se tibi commendat.

EXAMPLES.

1. *You, that very same wretch*, who have threatened destruction to whole cities and countries.

2. You have done so well, that no one thinks *himself* well recommended to *you*, without some letters of *mine*.

3. But if this is effected, not only by nature and exercise, but is also obtained by some kind of artifice, it does not seem improper to examine what *those* men say, *who* have left us *some* rules concerning *this* business.

4. But the first great rule of justice, is, that *no one*, without being attacked by an unprovoked injury, should commit violence against *any one*.

There is a peculiar elegance in the structure of a sentence, when the relative of one clause can be immediately followed by the relative of the subsequent clause, if it is in a different case from the former: as, I admire their folly *who* arrogate to themselves alone those divine arts, *which* they ought not even to meddle with: *Eorum stultitiam miror, qui, quas ne attingere quidem debebant, has divinas artes sibi solis arrogant.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Some philosophers of our age are also guilty of this error, *who* express in words far removed from common usage, new, and often inelegantly coined by themselves, and with an affectation of too great subtilty, those things *which* they might deliver in popular and perspicuous language.

2. I have seen those, *who* would exhort their scholars to the pursuit of learning, in the very same words in *which* Alexander the Great would encourage his men to fight bravely; and I have seen those who, being about to declaim against rude despisers of the gentle Muses, would steal Cicero's invectives against Catiline.

If we wish to add some circumstance to the

subject of which we are speaking, or to gain more attention to it, then we may add one of the demonstrative pronouns, *is*, *idem*, &c. with the conjunction *et* or *que*, and thus form an additional member of the sentence ; as,

He wore a garment which came down to his ankles, *mean and dirty* :

Veste erat indutus talari, et eâ tetrâ, et sordidâ.

EXAMPLES.

1. I have a son, *an only one*.
2. Pansa, *the Consul*, did not blush to declaim.
3. Alexander defeated Darius with his immense army, *and that when* a young man.
4. I have only received one letter from you, *and that* a very short one.
5. This sort of discourses, maintained and supported by the authority of old, *and at the same time* illustrious men, seems, I know not how, to have more weight and dignity.
6. I was certainly out of my senses to endeavour to enter into a contest with an academician, *and rhetorician too*.

The pronouns *ille*, *iste*, &c. are also added, with the word *quidem*, when one quality is to be granted and the other denied on the same subject ; as,

Philosophers not bad *indeed*, but not ingenious enough :

Philosophi minimè mali illi quidem, sed non satis acuti.

EXAMPLES.

1. We must use the greater endeavours, because many Latin books are said to be written already by men *very good and virtuous indeed*, but not learned enough.

2. I have also added Cicero's Treatise on Friendship, and that on Old Age, to which I have subjoined a few annotations, short *indeed*, but if I mistake not, not inapplicable.

*3. That commonwealth will always flourish which often produces noble and virtuous men, who will not by inactive and ignoble lives, disgrace the fair fame of their ancestors, but who, in the pursuit of glory, are animated with the noblest zeal, by representing to themselves the virtues of their forefathers, *dead indeed* to the eyes of men, but always living in the memory of the good.

4. This is not at all approved by your friends, *very good and honest men indeed*, but not at all conversant in public affairs.

The pronoun primitive is elegantly placed after the infinitive, even when used as the accusative that should go before it; and after adjectives and participles, to which it serves as a substantive; as,

You think that *you are slighted*, because I write not again:

Contemni te putas, quòd non rescribam.

EXAMPLES.

1. They suffer *themselves to be burned* with heat upon the mountains.

2. Struck with astonishment at the ill treatment of others, they suffer *themselves to be bowed down* and quite oppressed.

3. Cato writes that armies have often gone with alacrity to places whence they never hoped *to return*.

When a verb governs several nouns, one noun is elegantly placed before, and the other, especially if it consists of many syllables, is placed after the verb; as,

Virtue brings *praise and dignity*:
Virtus laudem affert ac dignitatem.

EXAMPLES.

1. They can neither exercise *justice, nor friendship*.
 2. Though riches procure many comforts of life, yet, if a man is too eager in the pursuit of his interests, he cannot but bring upon himself *cares and anxieties*.
 3. He was so conversant in the art of war, that by his skill and stratagems, he completely deceived the *general and his army*.
-

The pronoun *ipse* is more elegant in the nominative, though the primitive pronoun, to which it is joined, be the case of the verb; that is, when the primitive pronoun may in its application, be referred to the nominative case: as,

He injured himself: Sibi ipse nocuit.

EXAMPLES.

1. In this, I reproach *myself*. (I myself reproach myself.)
2. The wise man, who neither profits *himself* nor others by his wisdom, is wise to no purpose.
3. *He* has acquired *to himself* very great glory.

4. *They* have been able of *themselves* to execute nothing with vigor and resolution without Sylla.

Prepositions, as the word implies, should come before their case ; but they are sometimes very elegantly separated from it by a genitive case ; as,

The river Hypanis flows into Pontus *on the side of Europe* :

Hypanis fluvius ab Europæ parte in Pontum influit.

EXAMPLES.

1. The first object of moral beauty, which consists in the knowledge of truth, greatly concerns human nature ; for we are all impelled and insensibly led *to the desire of knowledge and learning.*

2. But most men are generally brought to forget justice, when they have fallen *into the desire of power, honors and glory.*

3. Domitian would sometimes aim his arrows with so much skill and certainty *at the hand of a boy, who stood at a distance, and who held it stretched out as a mark,* that they passed through the intervals of the fingers, without doing any injury to the child.

Other words having an immediate relation to the adjective and substantive, especially a genitive case ; and the prepositions *erga, in, adversus, &c.* are elegantly introduced between them, the adjective being generally placed first : as,

The lasting remembrance of your benefits towards your country will remain : Sempiterna tu-

orum erga patriam beneficiorum memoria vigebit.

EXAMPLES.

1. Nature, in the beginning, gave this instinct to *every kind of animals*, to defend themselves, their lives and bodies, and to decline those things which might seem prejudicial to them; but to seek and procure every thing, which is necessary to their subsistence, as food, shelter, and other things of the same kind.

2. For what need is there of *long declamations in the Senate*, when good men are so soon agreed? What need is there of *frequent assemblies of the people*, when not the ignorant and the many, but only one man, and he too endued with consummate wisdom, deliberates on the affairs of the commonwealth?

3. Happy is the man indeed, whose safety affords not *greater joy to himself, than to all mankind*.

4. They are and will be lasting witnesses of *your favors towards me*, and of my affection.

The genitive is elegantly put before the noun that governs it, with one or more words between them; except when the genitive is governed by a neuter adjective, in which case it must be placed after it; as,

Let us try the *honor of those friends whom you love so much*:

Amicorum quos adèd diligis fidem spectemus.

EXAMPLES.

1. You will mention *the perfidy, the artifices, and the treachery of several persons towards us*.

2. *This reputation of wisdom, which Fannius made mention of just now*, does not please me so much.

3. Friendship and *the union of the heart* have much more sweetness.

Demonstrative pronouns are also elegantly separated from their substantives.

EXAMPLES.

1. A glorious action and worthy *Hercules himself*, by whom *I have sworn*.

2. I possess a soul unawed by dangers, and I think *that honor to which you aspire*, gloriously purchased with life itself.

Two verbs, of which one is governed by the other, are elegantly separated.

EXAMPLES.

1. What can be more disgraceful, than for a wise man to fashion the conduct of his life according to the language of the ignorant? Now, what is understood by wise and honorable? Certainly nothing but what *may justly be commended on its own account*. For if it is only that, which regards the gratification of the senses, what honor is that which *may be derived even from the shambles?*

2. But since, in affording assistance to men, *a regard is wont to be paid to their merits or their fortune*, it may be said, and indeed it is the common language of mankind, that, in conferring their kindnesses, they observe the disposition and manners, and not the fortune, of men.

Prepositions are generally placed after the pronoun relative, as *quam circà, quem penès, quos inter, hunc juxtà, &c.* and it must be needless to observe, that *tenès* is always placed after its case, and *cum* after the ablatives *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*, and after *quo, quâ, quibus*.

To avoid ambiguity, we often prefix *indè*, to the preposition *à* or *ab*, when it is meant to de-

note the beginning of any period of time. Thus we say, *indè ab adolescentiâ factum*, which otherwise might be understood to be effected by youth.

In mentioning the saying of any one, the verbs *inquam* and *aio* are always placed after one or two words of the saying recited; and sometimes at the very end: as,

When some one meanly born told Lælius that he was unworthy of his ancestors, *he said*, but you indeed are worthy of yours:

Lælius, quandò ei quidam malo genere natus diceret, indignum esse suis majoribus: at herculè, inquit, tu tuis dignus.

EXAMPLES.

1. What then does Chrysippus mean? Strength of mind, *says he*, is the science of suffering well.

2. Ennius pleases me, *some one will say*, because he never deviates from the common acceptation of words, and Pacuvius pleases me, *another man will say*.

3. When some one asked Diogenes at what hour a man ought to dine; if he is rich, *he said*, when he will; if he is poor, when he can.

4. Accius *said*, there are many unjust and faithless men in a kingdom, and few good men.

As the style acquires peculiar elegance from the order and arrangement of words, so it must be observed that variety itself gives great beauty to sentences. *Nihil enim tam vitiosum est, ut ait Cicero, quàm si dicendi genus semper est idem.*

Thus: As medicine is the art of *health*, pilotage of *navigation*, so prudence is the art of *living*:

Ut medicina valetudinis, navigationis gubernatio, sic vivendi ars est prudentia.

One clause *ends* with the genitive, and the next *begins* with it, to give greater variety to the sentence. This varied order should in general be observed in the enumeration of several particulars.

EXAMPLES.

1. Friendship is a real *pleasure* in prosperity: a *resource* in *adversity*: quietness in *private life*. (*In mediis.*)

2. These are the pleasing effects of philosophy: it *pours* balm into our minds, it *removes* all imaginary anxieties, it *delivers* us from inordinate desires, and *dispels* every alarm.

3. I have read in the natural history of Pliny, that there are certain families of men in Africa, which have the power of fascinating by the voice; and if any should too immoderately praise their *stately* trees, their *smiling* harvests, their *beautiful* children, their *fine* horses, and their herds of the *most excellent* breed, all these would die immediately.



THE arrangement of words depends also upon our ideas: the order and succession of which being closely observed, will give greater perspicuity and elegance to the style: the neglect of this method in modern languages, and especially in the English, is apt to lead the scholar into error. What arises first, or is supposed upon mature consideration, to arise first, in the natural

order of our thoughts, should as much as possible be placed first in the sentence; except harmony, or a climax, which, in order to raise the attention, throws back the most emphatical words, should require the contrary. The natural order of the ideas may be partly understood from this, that we say, *men and women, day and night, rising and sitting*, rather than the reverse of these. To illustrate this more fully: Cicero, in his oration against Verres, has this passage: *Annius, a Roman Knight, says, that a Roman citizen was beheaded*; he does not say, *Annius, Eques Romanus, dicit civem Romanum securi percussum esse*; but, as what stamped the deed with peculiar indignity, was the idea that it was a Roman citizen, who was so inhumanly treated, the Orator begins by these emphatical words: *Civem Romanum, securi esse percussum, &c.*—Thus the inattention of the English to these nice distinctions would prevent the scholar, if he adhered too closely to it, from giving the passage all the force and elegance, of which it is capable. The same citizen, at the place of execution, at Messana, exclaims, *Civis Romanus sum*, not *sum Civis Romanus*.

In the Latin language, then, the arrangement most commonly observed, is, to place first in the sentence, that word which expresses the principal object of the discourse, together with its circumstances; and afterwards, the person, or the thing that acts upon it. This order, besides the natural succession of the ideas, gratifies more the rapidity of the imagination, which naturally

runs first to that which is its chief object ; and having once named it, carries it in view through the rest of the sentence. Thus in these lines of Horace :

*Justum et tenacem propositi virum,
Non civium ardor prava jubentium,
Non vultus instantis tyranni,
Mente quatit solidâ.*

Here the words are arranged with a much greater regard to the figure which the several objects make in the fancy, than the construction of the English sentence would admit ; which would require the "*Justum et tenacem propositi virum,*" though undoubtedly the capital object in the sentence to be thrown into the last place.

EXAMPLES.

1. We make most use of the *direction of the soul*, and of the *service of the body*.

2. It is impossible for me to pass over in silence, *such remarkable mildness, such singular and unheard-of clemency, and such unusual moderation*, in the exercise of supreme power.

3. For, O my dearest brother, thou hast lost with thy life, *not a kingdom, but banishment, poverty, and all those afflictions which now overwhelm me*.

4. He occupies with his armies *your very kingdom* : he keeps *me* closely besieged *whom* you have appointed governor of that province ; and my dangers prove how little he valued the *words of your ambassadors*.

The person, to which the nominative refers, as the object of its agency, that is, as the case of the verb, is in the nature of the thoughts, before the verb itself, and therefore should be so in the structure of the sentence.

EXAMPLES.

1. My brother promised *me*, that he would send *me* some books.

*2. But he instructed by various means to the perpetration of the vilest practices, *the youth whom*, as we have seen before, he had so artfully inveigled into all his purposes; from these he could at pleasure command *wretches, who would not scruple* either to give false evidence, or to forge a will; in whose esteem, honour, fortune or dangers, were cheap and insignificant.

3. I know that the whole weight of this difficult and dangerous task will be imposed on *you*; for the whole people have fixed their eyes on *you*, they regard *you* as their protector and guardian.

The same may be said of a thing, or word, which comes in the place of the person; as

1. Your father has forgiven *your crimes*.

*2. You basely flattered their *supine indifference by which* the state was nearly brought to the brink of ruin; and turned into ridicule our *firmness of mind, which* resolutely stemmed the opposing dangers.

The reason for which a thing is done, being in the order of the ideas thought of before the verb, should be placed before it.

EXAMPLES.

1. I beseech you to succour my misery, *in consideration of our former friendship*.

2. But you had presented him with a golden crown, *on account of his great virtue*.

3. Again and again, most earnestly do I entreat you on *the score of our strict intimacy, and your own distinguished benevolence*.

4. Of which friends you have a great number, *owing to your very great and exemplary virtues.*

Let it not, however, be understood that these words, to which we assign this precedence, are always to be in the very beginning of a sentence ; for generally either the nominative or the case of the verb, or some other words, are prefixed, and then these words, if there be more than one clause in the sentence, from the first periodical circuit, or transposition ; as we shall show more fully, when we come to give rules for the structure of a period.

Thus ; Cæsar said that he would receive them into his friendship, *for the sake of the Ædui* : we shall say ; *Cæsar, Æduorum causâ, sese, eos in fidem recepturum dixit* ; with greater elegance than *Æduorum causâ, Cæsar....*

In mentioning several things, from which one is excepted or particularized, the particles denoting that exception with their cases, as *præter, nisi*, will be placed before the others.

EXAMPLES.

1. I greatly admire your benevolence and liberality, *besides your other virtues.*

2. For if we should exhibit to your view the whole tissue of this man's vices and iniquities, *except this foul transaction, which delicacy obliges me to pass over in silence*, we shall not find his life distinguished by one single trait, that can retrieve his name from eternal disgrace.

3. I beg of you, that you would send me some books, *if not all.*

The ablative, in expressions like these, is more elegantly placed before the comparative.

EXAMPLES.

1. Quicker than hope.
 2. Longer than what was just.
 3. More sad than usual.
 4. He is a man *much more illustrious* in peace, than in war.
 5. *So much* easier is it to accuse, than to defend ; to inflict, than to cure, a wound.
-

Adverbs should be placed before the verb, as the manner or degree, in which the nominative corresponds with its verb arises first in the mind.

EXAMPLES.

1. He came to me *of his own accord.*
 2. Cicero has written *excellently well* on that subject.
 3. They succeeded *very ill* in that business.
-

The vocative is usually thrown back ; at least after several words of the sentence, except some sudden emotion of the mind is to be expressed ; but, in order to avoid ambiguity, it should come immediately after some word, to which it properly belongs ; as,

Your uncle, O Brutus, has removed this doubt :

Quam dubitationem avunculus tuus, Brute, sustulit.

EXAMPLES.

1. It has long been a matter of great *doubt with me, Brutus*, whether it were more difficult, or a matter of greater importance, to refuse you at once, when you repeatedly asked me the same thing, or to grant you your request at once.—(Here the vocative coming with the verb, to doubt, which must be the last in the sentence, will be equally thrown back.)

2. It cannot but be a matter of astonishment *to you, my Lords*, that, while there are so many men of the first dignity and eminence sitting here, I should claim the preference in rising to address you.

The verb *sum* has a peculiar elegance in the beginning of a sentence, or after negative words, as *nullus, nihil, nemo*, and after comparatives and superlatives; words of many syllables; after adjectives and verbals in *dus*.

EXAMPLES.

1. For the mind *is* divided into two parts; one of which is a partaker of reason, the other is destitute of it. When therefore it is enjoined us, that we should command ourselves; the injunction is, that reason should serve as a check upou temerity. For there *is* something in the minds of men, by nature, low, abject and humble; in a manner enervated, languid and infirm. If there was nothing else in man, nothing could be more deformed than man. But reason, the mistress and empress of all, is at hand, which receiving its whole support from itself, and continually making progressive advances, becomes at last a perfect beauty. Now the great care of man must be, that this reason may command that part of the mind, which ought to obey.

2. For there *is* no misfortune, which does not seem to threaten us all, from the general disorder, which prevails through the whole world.

3. For, if we must comply with the desires of our friends, they must no longer be called friendships, but real conspiracies.

4. It is a criminal and impious custom, to dispute against the gods, whether from design or caprice.

When two words come closely together, one of which is a monosyllable, and the other a word of many syllables, the monosyllable is always placed before the polysyllable : as, *vir clarissimus* ; *ars pulcherrima* ; *me amat*, &c.

Sentences are very elegantly closed by comparatives and superlatives, as indeed by any word, and chiefly verbs, of many syllables : as, *Pares cum paribus, veteri proverbio, facillimè congregantur.*

The reason that long words should, as much as possible, close a complete sentence, is, that as the voice of the speaker is apt to become remiss and languid, and might drop one syllable in the pronunciation, still the word itself, or the meaning of the word, and often of the sentence itself, resting upon a sonorous penultima, may not escape the ear of the hearer. *Libenter clauditur ditrochæo*, or a double trochee, — *υι—υι* as *comprōbāvit*. Though this applies chiefly to speaking, yet it has been generally transferred into the elegance of writing Latin. Another reason why the verb should as much as possible close the sentence, is, that, as the force of the idea lies in it, it may, in the pause that is necessarily

made between each sentence, become more forcibly impressed upon the mind. But in the arrangement of words, care must be taken to avoid the too frequent recurrence of the same termination or cadence, as it has been observed before, which much offend the ear: as, *nullo timore nec dolore*.

EXAMPLES.

1. This God we shall truly call happy, yours very *laborious*. For whether the world itself is God, who can enjoy less tranquility than without the intermission of one moment of time to turn with a wonderful *rapidity* round the celestial axis? Now nothing is happy but what enjoys perfect repose. Or whether there be some God in the world itself, which rules, governs, and preserves in their due order the course of the stars, the change of the seasons, the vicissitudes and the succession of things, which, as it contemplates the seas and the land, *protects* the interests and lives of men: Surely such a God must be employed in a very troublesome and *arduous* task.

*2. For as men oppressed with a severe fit of illness, and laboring under the raging heat of a fever, are often at first seemingly relieved by a draught of cold water, but are afterwards *afflicted* with redoubled fury and vehemence; in like manner, this distemper, which has seized the Commonwealth, eased a little by the punishment of this traitor, will from his surviving associates soon *assume new force*.

3. The nourishment and care of the body must have for its end the preservation of its health and strength, and *not pleasure*.

Sentences are also elegantly terminated by *omnis*, *nullus*, *nemo*, when the idea of universality is conveyed with a more particular stress: as,

There is either no virtue, or *every* pain must be despised.

Aut nulla virtus est, aut contemnendus dolor omnis.

EXAMPLES.

1. What great desire can move you to pass a law, which is attended with the greatest disgrace, and has not *one* merit?

2. If sleep did not bring rest to our bodies, and as it were a medicine for our labours, we must think that it was unnatural, since it takes away our senses, and *all* action.

3. We perceive that in this age, literature is patronized by *no* rich men.

4. If you should arrive thither, like Ulysses, you will not know *one* of your relations.

Sentences also receive peculiar elegance and force, when terminated by an accumulation of two or three emphatic words, more generally verbs, rising in a regular climax one above the other, sometimes with, but more frequently without, any conjunctions. But this mode of concluding sentences must be very sparingly used, and only when the subject requires a greater degree of animation and energy to be thrown into the language; as, For what did I ordain, what did I undertake, or what did I execute, but by the *advice, authority, and decision* of this assembly? *Quid enim constitui, quid gessi, quid egi, nisi ex hujus ordinis consilio, auctoritate, sententiâ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. For in proportion to any man's ignorance of antiquity, and Grecian literature, does he with the utmost petulance and

contumely *abuse, discard and deride* those ancient illustrious heroes.

2. For is there a word in these letters, that is not full of politeness, good manners, and benevolence?

*3. When an end had thus been put to the war, and rewards and punishments had been bestowed according to the deserts of each man, he returned to Rome : but it is generally understood that only the aged went to meet him at his return ; for even then, as during the remainder of his whole life, the Roman youth *expressed the greatest detestation and abhorrence of him.*

*4. Will posterity be so deaf as not to hear our shouts of applause, called forth by our admiration of your virtues and good fortune, at a time when two of the greatest and most powerful kings were engaged in a long and sanguinary war ; when every one of the neighboring princes was either induced by inclination, drawn by motives of duty, or even compelled by necessity, to espouse the cause of this or that party, when our eyes *were dimmed* by the dazzling brightness of arms, our ears *stunned* by the din of war, and our imaginations *affrighted* by continual alarms?

OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES, OR DIFFERENT MEMBERS
OF A SENTENCE.

AS what we have said concerning the natural order of words is equally applicable to the arrangement of clauses, it will be only necessary shortly to mention, that, as far as they follow the natural order of our ideas, so far in general they will be conducive to elegance and perspicuity. But as in the arrangement of the several clauses of a compound sentence, recourse must be had to a frequent transposition, care must be taken not to throw the sentence into disorder and obscurity. The chief thing therefore to be avoided is the hyperbaton or synchysis, that is, a confused intermixture of words belonging to one clause, with the words that belong to another, which might materially alter or obscure the sense. As we would not say, for

Great was my joy when I received the book from you :

Magnum ego librum cùm abs te accepissem fuit meum gaudium ;

Because the reader would not know whether *magnum* referred to *librum* or *gaudium*. As it is however of great consequence to composition, how, and what members of a sentence should precede the others, the two following examples may serve more fully to illustrate this. It is necessary that those clauses which explain and

define a thing should be placed first, or, at least should immediately after the nominative case, or some other introductory word, (vid. page 110.) form the first clause of the sentence, thus,

I wonder that Brutus should have been among the assassins of Cæsar, as he had received so many favors from him :

We shall say,

Miror Brutum, qui à Cæsare tot beneficiis affectus erat, inter ejus interfectores fuisse :

For were we to say, *Miror Brutum, inter Cæsaris interfectores fuisse, qui ab eo tot beneficiis affectus erat*, the *qui*, besides the inelegance of the sentence, might be referred equally to Cæsar as to Brutus.—And again,

Man is mortal, as he is furnished with a body : but immortal inasmuch as he thinks :

We will not say, *Homo est mortalis, quoad corpore est instructus ; sed immortalis, quoad cogitat :* but we shall render it by this transposition of the words that explain the idea :

Homo, quoad corpore est instructus, mortalis ; quoad cogitat, immortalis est.

These rules, however, as we mentioned above, will admit of some exceptions ; as, where those divisions that should come first are longer than those that follow ; we should not say, *Cur illa res tam brevi tempore ac sine negotio fieri potuerit, nescio :* but, *Nescio, cur, &c.* for in this case the harmony of the sentence requires that the longer clauses should come last : but the judgment of the proficient scholar will easily direct him with-

out the necessity of having recourse to rules to mark each exception.

Clauses denoting the place where, and the time when, any thing is done, though they may be last in English, should come in the beginning of the sentence ; as,

I shall give you *the book*, *as soon as* I shall have received it :

Librum, cùm primùm accepero, tibi dabo.

EXAMPLES.

1. *He* had not, *where* to turn himself.
 2. You should consider that you will be in the power of your enemy, *in whatever place you may be*
 3. *Thus* the person of the King escaped, *while our troops* were employed in pillaging these villages.
 4. *He* was guarded first by his own modesty, and then by the vigilance and instruction of his father, *as long as his age exposed* him to such suspicions.
 - *5. Therefore Brutus silently waited for an opportunity. *For* he himself exhibited an incredible patience, *as long as he saw you* tamely bearing the yoke of slavery ; but when he saw you intent upon the recovery of your best rights, he then prepared to second your noble efforts.
-

Clauses expressing a cause or reason, beginning by *quia*, *quoniam*, *cùm*, *quòd*, and sometimes *cur*, must also come first : as,

I shall always love you, *because you* have conferred numberless favors upon me :

Te, quia me innumeris beneficiis affeceris, propterea semper amabo.

1. *I could not write to you, because I knew not where you were.*

2. *But if there could be no reason at all, why you should be overwhelmed with so great sorrow, it appears a wonder to all, that you betrayed those signs of a weak and degenerate mind.*

*3. *How much more wisely did our ancestors act, who invented an extraordinary punishment against parricides, well knowing that there was nothing so sacred, which the presumption or wickedness of men would not violate; in order that they, whom nature herself had not been able to retain within the bounds of their duty, might be deterred from the perpetration of so foul a crime, by the severity of the punishment? They ordered that they should be sewed alive into a sack, and thus be thrown into the river.*

4. *For no one imagined that any man existed, who could immediately enjoy the sweets of undisturbed rest, after having by the enormity of his guilt, violated every divine and human law: because they, who have been guilty of so foul a crime, not only cannot enjoy calm repose, but not even breathe without horror and trembling.*

Clauses denoting any thing conditional, the guides of which are *si, nisi, siquidem, &c.* as,

I beg you to forgive me, if I shall say any thing with too great freedom:

Ego, si quid liberius dixero, ignoscatis velim.

EXAMPLES.

1. *I beg of you to send me the book, if you have it.*

2. *The atrocity of the deed would scarcely appear credible to mankind, if the parricide were not almost exposed to the manifest view of all.*

*3. *Would not that man demand the payment of a debt, if*

it was justly due, who could not only extort payment of a sum, which not being justly due, was properly withheld, but even the blood and vitals of a man nearly related to him.

Clauses denoting a concession, beginning by *etsi, etiamsi, quamquam, licet, ut, &c.* as,

And *though* they are many, yet they stand in need of a teacher and experience :

Qui, quamquam plurimi sunt, doctorem usumque desiderant.

EXAMPLES.

1. I would not do that, *though it were* in my power.—(It is better to make use of a transposition, with the addition of *tamen*, and say, *ego, quamquam poteram, tamen, &c.*)

2. You will determine that there is no occasion for a long speech, *though* time enough for speaking might have been granted us, (with the addition of *tamen* in its proper place.)

*3. That General is *therefore* by no means fit to command in an Asiatic and a regal war, *even suppose you should have one, who in a pitched battle* may appear capable of defeating the forces of these two powerful kings ; *unless he is also one that can restrain* his hands, eyes, and thoughts, from the riches of our allies, from their wives and children, from the ornaments of their cities and temples, and from the gold and treasures of their palaces.

4. And perhaps in undertaking this cause, impelled by the rashness of youth, I may have acted imprudently. *But since I have undertaken* it, I will give all the succour and support in my power, *though terrors compass* me on every side, and dangers threaten me from every quarter.

Interrogative clauses, which mark at the same time the extent and object of the thing, known

by the particles *quis, quid, an, utrum, cur, quomodò, quemadmodum, &c.* as instead of saying, *Nescio quis sit; Quis sit, nescio*, is more elegant.

EXAMPLES.

1. It is very evident, *what* is right; but it does not so fully appear *what* is expedient.

2. You see *what* power he had; now hear *what* actions he performed.

3. Concerning *which*, O judges, I neither can discover *how* I can speak, nor *how* I can be silent.

Clauses expressing likeness or comparison, beginning by *velut, quasi, ut, tanquam, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

1. I was silent, as if I had not heard. (*Ego tanquam . . .* is better than *silui, tanquam.*)

2. When this sacrilegious wretch, the enemy and despoiler of every thing sacred and religious, had seen this divine image, he was seized with such a burning desire and madness, *as if he himself had received* a stroke from that very torch, that he ordered the magistrates to pull it to pieces and deliver it to him.

Relative clauses beginning by *qui, qualis, quantus, quot, quoties, quàm, quantoperè, ut, ubi*, should in general be placed before their corresponding clauses, beginning by *is, talis, tantus, tot, toties, tam, tantoperè, ita, ibi*, expressed or understood; subject, however, to those exceptions, to which we adverted before.

Qui followed by *is* :

EXAMPLES.

1. God loves those who pursue virtue. (*Qui virtuti student, eos, &c.* and not *Deus amat eos qui.*)

*2. But let us embrace and observe that, *which has a most extensive effect, whose influence* is felt not merely in our own safety and preservation, but also in the acquisition of wealth and power; to banish terror, and retain love and benevolence: thus shall the utmost of our ambition be gratified, both in our private concerns, and in our political aims and pursuits. *For* they, *who* wish to inspire terror, must necessarily fear those, *by whom they* are feared.

3. In those, *who have* a superior greatness of soul, the desire of money is directed to the acquisition of power.

4. I will not say this for the sake of aggravating the circumstances, but I will truly explain to you *those* sensations *which* I myself received.

So also the compounds of *qui* and *quis*, as *quicunque, quidquid, &c.*

That will remain all your own, *whatever support* you afford the Commonwealth in these most dangerous times.

Qualis followed by *talis*: as,

He is just *such a man*, as his father was:

Qualis pater fuit, talis hic est.

1. It is easy to perceive, if you wish to retrace the annals of past ages, that the state and the people have always been *such as the great men* of the state were: and that *whatever changes* have taken place in the morals of the great, *the same* will also follow in the people.

*2. With great truth did Socrates affirm, that this was the nearest, and as it were the compendious way to glory; if any one would earnestly endeavor to be *such as he wished* to appear. For if there are any, who suppose that they can acquire truth and solid glory by hypocrisy, by vain and empty ostentation, by dissimulation not only of the tongue, but of the counte-

nance, they are egregiously mistaken. True glory pushes its roots deep into the ground, and even shoots forth new stems. Hypocrisy and fiction, like short-lived flowers, quickly fall away; nor can any dissimulation or disguise be lasting.

3. I beg of you that you would now prove yourself *such a man, as* you have shown yourself before.

Quantus followed by *tantus* :

So much esteem shall I suppose that you have for me, *as you bestow* care and attention in the preservation of your health.

Quot followed by *tot* :

1. You have almost read *as many* books, *as I have* seen.

*2. We shall call him an eloquent orator, whose speeches in the senate and at the bar, will strike with conviction, affect with delight, and command persuasion. But there are *as many* kinds of speaking, *as there are* duties in the orator. The subtle and acute in convincing the judgment, the soft and the temperate in exciting delight, but the vehement and the passionate in bending the heart to persuasion; in this last lies the whole force of the orator.

3. There are *as many* stars in the heavens which escape the human sight, *as* there are which are beheld in the clearest night.

Quoties followed by *toties*.

1. We cannot but admire the divine wisdom *as often as we* contemplate the plants, and other productions of the earth.

*2. When we reflect on the other illustrious actions of your life, though you will find reason to attribute much to bravery, yet more must be attributed to your good fortune. But *so often* shall be revived in your mind the pleasing remembrance of your extensive beneficence, *so often* shall you think of your amazing generosity, *so often* of your unparalleled wisdom, virtues, which I will venture to say not only constitute the highest, but the only happiness of our nature, *as often as you think*

of us, whom you have reserved to enjoy with yourself the happiness of our country.

3. He always came off conqueror, as often as he engaged with the enemy.

Quàm followed by *tam*, and *quamdiu* by *tamdiu* :

But if, he had been as dark and secret in the execution, as he was daring in the contrivance, he might on some occasions have even deceived us ; but there is this most fortunate circumstance attending him, that his unparalleled audacity is usually joined with the most singular stupidity.

Quantoperè followed by *tantoperè* :

If men studied as much to adorn the mind and cultivate the understanding, as they labor to adorn their body, nothing would be more common than wisdom and virtue.

Ut, quemadmodùm, sicut, followed by *ita, sic* :

1. With the same fortitude ought we to bear not only this calamity, but even the total overthrow of our fortune, as we have borne our former prosperity with calmness and moderation.

2. For he rendered his views and designs most evident to all, in his hope and expectation of corrupting justice, as he was barefaced and open in seizing all the money he could.

But sometimes, as in the following instance, and in forms of adjuration, *ità* will be more elegantly followed by *ut* : as,

*1. So may the prospects and the hopes of my remaining days be brightened by your good will and the approbation of

the Roman people, as I have accepted those magisterial offices, with which I have been hitherto invested by the Roman people, with the firm impression upon my mind, of the religious obligation, with which I bound myself to discharge them.

2. So may you return safe into your country, after having laid the city in ashes, as you succour the distress of an afflicted father, and listen to his humble petition.

Ubi followed by ibi:

'The complexion of the times is such, that every one thinks his own condition the most miserable, and wishes least to be *where he is*.

CHAPTER III.

OF CONJUNCTIONS, AND THE MODE OF CONNECT-
ING WORDS AND CLAUSES.



CONJUNCTIONS give a coherence and force to the sentence, and are necessary to elucidate the subject, which without them would be unintelligible. Their proper disposition is therefore of the greatest consequence. Such indeed is their utility, that the best writers often multiply them by the figure polysyndeton: and the few cases when the connexion will not suffer by their absence, are chiefly in lofty subjects that demand great vehemence of expression, and mark some sudden affection or agitation of the mind; when the gesture or action of the speaker may be supposed to supply their place; as in that well-known exclamation of Cicero, *Excessit, evasit, erupit!*

In the connexion of single words which have some difference in their meaning, though they agree closely with each other, with the same nominative, or the same verb; where the English would be content with one *and*, the Latins use two or even more. This double *et*, has the force of the double *tum, non modò sed etiam*; as,

He favours, notices and loves me beyond the rest :

Me præ ceteris et colit, et observat et diligit.

EXAMPLES.

1. I wish you *to* demand *and* expect every thing from me.
2. The day after, in the morning, the Germans persisting *in* their treachery *and* dissimulation, came in great numbers to the camp.
3. But *if reason* teaches the learned ; *necessity*, the barbarian ; *common custom*, all nations in general ; *and* even Nature itself instructs the brutes to defend *their bodies, limbs, and* lives, when attacked, by all possible methods, you cannot pronounce this action criminal, without determining at the same time, that whoever falls into the hands of a highwayman must of necessity perish either by the sword or your decisions.

This repetition of the *et*, is made for the sake of perspicuity, because the mind of the hearer naturally expects something more to follow, when it has been prepared for it by one of the conjunctions ; as,

Liber tibi jam redditus est, aut brevi reddetur ; It is not known whether the sentence is to end at *redditus est*, or not, as it stands ; but when you add, *liber tibi aut jam redditus est, aut brevi reddetur*, that doubt vanishes from the beginning ; but it must be observed, that if the words to be connected mark no difference with each other, there must be but one conjunction : as,

Not a single act of bravery could pass unobserved ; for all the adjoining hills *and* eminences, which afforded a near prospect of the sea, were covered with our men.

The connexion, especially in grave and serious subjects, is often made by the repetition of the preceding word, instead of a conjunction : as,

I think that *nothing* is more sweet, more delightful, *or* more worthy the liberty of man, than friendship :

Amicitia nihil dulcius, nihil suavis, nihil hominis libertate dignius, esse puto.

EXAMPLES.

*1. At the very first onset, Numitor, giving it out that the enemy had invaded the city and attacked the royal palace, recalled the Alban youth to guard and defend the citadel with their arms ; but when he saw the two young men returning to him with joy in their countenance, and ready to congratulate him on their success in having put the tyrant to death, he immediately called a council, and laid before them the wicked and barbarous conduct of his brother towards himself, discovered the origin of his grandsons, *how* they had been born, *educated, and discovered*, pointed out the assassination of the tyrant, and himself the author and contriver of it.

2. Nor is the sound of the trumpet the *same*, when the army is marching to an engagement, *or* when it sounds a retreat.

3. They have chosen *me* as their refuge against oppression, *as* the avenger of their wrongs, *the patron* of their rights, *and* the sole manager of the present impeachment.

4. *If* any king, *if* any foreign state *or* nation, had been guilty of the like inhumanity against a Roman citizen, would you not make them feel the full weight of public vengeance ? Would you not pursue them with the terror of your arms ? Could we suffer this injury and ignominy of the Roman name to remain unpunished and unrevenged ?

5. *God* has provided for the wants, *and* the conveniences, *and* the preservation of man.

When the words denote similitude or compari-

son, instead of *et*, we may connect them by *ut*, followed by *ita*; as,

You have performed the greatest *and* the most useful actions :

Res, ut maximas, ita utilissimas, gèssisti.

EXAMPLES.

1. *The people of Tarsus, who are the very worst of allies; and the people of Laodicea, who surpass them in folly and perverseness, sent of their own accord, for Dolabella; from both which cities he levied and formed the image of an army, having by their numbers the appearance of a Grecian army.*

*2. *We have heard of the Gods being under the influence of the same desires, diseases, and passions; nor were they, as fable tells us, without their wars and battles: nor did the Gods, as in the battles of Homer, some on one side, and some on the other, lend each his assistance to two contending armies, but they carried on their own wars with the Titans and the Giants.*

3. *Your country will for ever love and revere your name, for you have performed the greatest and most useful exploits.*

When it is necessary to introduce a circumstance of greater weight than what precedes it, it is elegantly connected by *quid? quod*; as,

A wise man lives contented, *and indeed* the wiser a man is, the more resigned he is in his death.

Sapiens contentus vivit: quid? quod sapientissimus quisque animo æquissimo moritur.

EXAMPLES.

1. *I have ever been ready to be of service to you in whatever things I could, with my assistance and my advice: nay, I have not even denied you my own garments and money.*

2. I found the young man whom you extolled with such extravagant praises, not at all advanced in his learning; *he did* not even know how to decline nouns or to conjugate verbs with any correctness.

The connexion between two nouns or subjects conveying nearly the same idea, is elegantly made by the repetition of *tum*; as, *odit tum virtutem, tum liberales artes*; but if there is a difference between them, the first which is the inferior idea has generally *cum* prefixed to it, and the more forcible is connected by *tum*; as,

We ought to love those who have deserved well of us, *and* chiefly our preceptors.

Cùm omnes de nobis benè meritos, tum maximè præceptores nostros, amare debemus.

EXAMPLES.

1. I know your mother, a pious *and* honest woman.
 2. He was a young man of the best disposition, *and* of great erudition.
 3. Good health, and frugality which chiefly procures it, is *both* necessary in every kind of pursuit, *and* chiefly in this important study.
 4. I have *both* at other times recommended to you to practise virtue, and to observe an unwearied diligence in your studies, *but* I have particularly done it in my last letters to you.
-

Words referring to the same subject, but whose meaning is so far opposite that one of them may be taken away or denied, are connected by the repetition of *aut, vel* or *sive*, where the English would be satisfied with one: as,

To-morrow I shall write or come :
Cras aut scribam aut veniam.

EXAMPLES.

1. I have asked my father *that he would send me* those books, *or* money to buy them.

2. Had I the perfidy which they possess, at least I should not have had the folly to betray *either* an open enmity, while I cherished a concealed and obscure hatred, *or* an inclination to hurt where I had not the power to do an injury.

*3. Dramatic writers, when the fabulous hero of their play, after having been educated under some poor shepherd, ignorant of his true parent, is discovered *to be of royal lineage, or* the offspring perhaps of some celestial divinity, always think it necessary to exhibit the noble youth, as still retaining a grateful affection for the honest rustic to whom he had so long supposed himself indebted for his birth.

Observe that when several words are to be joined by a conjunction copulative, the second is not inelegantly joined by the enclitic *que* and the third by *et* or *ac*; as,

I desire friendship, honors, and general knowledge :

Amicitiam honoresque, et rerum scientiam expeto.

EXAMPLES.

1. Your *elegant*, learned, and polite letters were delivered to me.

2. He did not suffer those whom he did not think capable of becoming orators, to lose their time with him, *and* he dismissed them, *and* used to persuade them to betake themselves to that pursuit for which he thought them best fitted.

What we have said concerning these conjunctions is nearly applicable to the negative.

The Latins seldom use *non* followed by *nec* or *neque*, but repeat either of the two latter.

EXAMPLES.

1. After this battle, Cæsar resolved *not* to give audience to their Ambassadors, *nor* admit them to terms of peace, seeing they had treacherously applied for a truce, and afterwards wantonly broken it.

2. That part of your excuse in which you say, that your letters are always couched in the same words, from your poverty of expression, *I do not* understand, *and do not* approve.

The connexion is also often made by the repetition of the preceding negative : as,

No one loves, or respects you :

Nemo te amat, nemo te colit.

EXAMPLE.

But in the glory which you have lately acquired, you have no associate, how great soever it is, and surely nothing can be greater ; it is all your own : *No* Commander, *Captain, troop or battalion* robs you here : nay, even Fortune, the Goddess who presides over human affairs, claims no share of this honour ; to you she resigns it.

Sometimes the connexion is effected by *ne quidem*, followed by *nedum*, when what follows is of greater force than what goes before ; and sometimes by *non modò non*, and *non modò*, followed by *sed*, *ne quidem*, when what follows is of less force than what precedes : but these are well-known forms.

EXAMPLES.

1. He has learned *neither* to write, *nor* read.
 2. For indeed we cannot bear that man to stand forward *as an* accuser, *or a* censurer, who himself is found guilty of that crime which he reproves in another.
-

It is scarcely necessary to observe, that the Latins generally use *nec* and *neque* for *et non*; for *et nunquam* always *nec unquam*; for *et nemo*, they use *nec ullus, nec quisquam*; for *et nihil, nec quidquam*; and for *et nusquam, nec usquam*.

In connecting divisions of sentences the same rule nearly applies as in connecting single words, by the repetition of *et*, if they refer to the same subject; or if one is negative, by *neque, nec*, for *et non* followed by *et*; if both are negative, by a double *nec* and *neque*; or where there is an opposition by the repetition of *aut, vel*; where the English would be often satisfied with one of the above conjunctions.

EXAMPLES.

*1. Thus *the* quality of their food, *their* perpetual exercise, *and* free unconfined manner of life, (because being from their childhood fettered by no rules of duty or education, they acknowledge no law but will and pleasure) *contribute* to make them strong, *and* to render them of a gigantic size.—(Here the repetition may be observed in the connexion of the single words, as in the two clauses.)

2. You therefore *were not* present at these transactions, *and* it has always been my chief care *not* to be present myself.

3. For I am deprived of a great number of my most inti-

mate friends, *of* whom the hand of death has cruelly robbed me, *or* whom the hard necessity of flight has dispersed into various parts.

4. Certainly, if the mind had not a forethought of a hereafter, it would *neither* harrass itself with so many toils, *nor* be tormented with so many cares and watchings, *nor* contend so often for life itself.

In connecting two clauses of a sentence, if the latter is the consequence or the effect of the former, they may be more closely joined by *ut*, instead of *quare, igitur, hinc, &c.* and by *ita ut* instead of the simple *et*: as,

You have never loved your brother: *hence* it is no wonder that he does not love you:

Tu nunquam fratrem amasti, ut non mirum sit, te ab eo non redamatum esse.

EXAMPLES.

1. The citizens we lost, fell in battle, not by the insolence of victory; *whence* there can be no doubt but that if it were possible, Cæsar would recall many from the shades.

2. Philip indeed, the King of Macedonia, was greatly surpassed by Alexander in the glory and magnitude of his exploits, but he was greatly superior to his son in gentleness of disposition and in humanity. The one was always great, the other was often debased by the blackest crimes: the precept *therefore* of those men is most wise who teach us, that the more exalted we are, the greater humility we should show.

3. When I had fasted for two whole days, *and* had not even tasted a drop of water, overcome as I was with languor and famine, I certainly found that I needed your good offices more than I thought you could possibly require mine.

Ita, followed by *ut*, may also be used for *quidem*, followed by *sed*: as,

I love you *indeed*, but I cannot indulge your vices :

Amo te ita, ut tamen tuis vitiis indulgere nequeam.

EXAMPLES.

*1. For what is there more common than for those who are alive to enjoy the free privilege of breathing, and those who are dead to have a little earth to cover their bones, for those who sail over the waters to have the full scope of the seas, and for the shipwrecked mariner to find a shore to be cast upon. They live *indeed*, while they do live, *but* they cannot draw their breath from heaven : they die *indeed*, *but* the earth does not cover their bones : they are *indeed* tossed upon the waves, *but* no ablution takes place ; lastly they are cast away *indeed*, *but* their dead bodies cannot even find rest upon the rocks.

2. There is also another report concerning the captives, that the ten first came ; and when it had been a subject of much doubt in the senate whether they should be admitted into the city or not, they were *indeed* admitted, *but* an audience was not granted them.

3. Preserve *indeed* a grave deportment, but do not fall into moroseness and melancholy. (This may be with the addition of *tamen*.)

Where both clauses express a doubt, the connexion is generally made by *utrùm*, or the enclitic *ne*, with the first, and *an* before the second.

EXAMPLE.

Alexander was a long time very doubtful, *whether* he should persevere, *or* retreat.

The connexion of two clauses is also more elegantly made by *is*, followed by *qui* ; by *talis*, followed by *qualis* ; by *tantus*, followed by *quan-*

tus ; *tot*, followed by *quot*, than by *is*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c. followed by *ut*.

EXAMPLES.

1. Your father proved himself *such* a man, *that* if you could show yourself the same, you would pass for a very great man. —Here *talem.....qualem* will be much better than *talem.....ut*.)

2. For what shows less, I do not say of an orator, but of a reasonable being, than to throw *that kind* of objection to an adversary, *that*, if he should deny it but upon his bare word, the objector could proceed no further.

*3. If then the benefits that philosophy has conferred upon mankind, and the delights we receive from the study of it are *so great, that* we cannot conceive any more important or more lasting to be derived from any other science ; why do we not devote our whole time and thoughts to the acquisition of philosophical knowledge ?

4. My love for you is *so great that* I should be the happiest of mortals, if your affection for me was *equal to it*.

The connexion of clauses may also be made by *tantum abest ut*, followed by another *ut* : as,
I *not only* have not forgotten you, *but* I think of you every day :

Tantum abest, tui ut oblitus sim, ut nullus prætereat dies, quin mihi in mentem tui veniat.

EXAMPLES.

*1. These amicable alliances are *not only not* founded on the basis of reciprocal wants, *but* we often see those men distinguished for their liberality and beneficence, whose power and riches, but, above all, whose superior virtue, (a much firmer support) have raised them above every necessity of having resource to the assistance of others.

*2. Therefore those who do not give a metrical or harmonious termination to their sentences seem to me to resemble the motion of those men whom the Greeks call *απαλκιστους*, and *not only* is the style *not* enervated by that careful disposition of words, as many will presume to assert, who from ignorance of their masters, the dullness of their own genius, or their dread of labor, have never been able to accomplish it, *but even* without it, all the force and energy of their sentences is lost.

3. My own private interests *indeed* I cannot have preferred in this, *for* I am sensible that I have drawn much hatred upon myself, partly secret, partly open, which I might have avoided, and by which you may profit.

4. You *not only are not* a perfect master of the Greek language, *but* you have scarcely learned its first rudiments.

In connecting sentences which contain a more complete and absolute sense, but which at the same time have a reference to the subject mentioned before, *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, as we have already seen, is often used instead of *hic*, *is*, *et*, *verò*, *igitur*, and sometimes *enim*, which are rejected; but it must be observed, that this relative must apply to what is immediately preceding.

As the use of the relative, and indeed this application of it in connecting sentences, merits the attention of those who study elegance, it will not be superfluous to advert to it again in this place.

EXAMPLES.

1. I have always received the most gentle, and at the same time the most salutary advice from you; *and if* I had followed your wise directions, I should now be the happiest of men. (Here *qui* may agree either with *advice* or with *I*.)

2. I went to his house, *but* when I could not find him, I returned home.

3. But if I defended my own safety against his very cruel and violent attack upon me, you ought to rest satisfied that I did not complain to you even of your brother's injurious treatment of me; *for when* I found that he was meditating to direct all the efforts of his tribunitial power towards my destruction, I then availed myself of the interest I had with your wife and sister to prevail upon them to deter him from doing me that injury.

In the beginning of a sentence which has a reference to what goes before, the Latins more frequently make use of *neque* than of *non* before *verò, enim, tamen*.

EXAMPLE.

1. *But nothing*, said he, seems to me of superior excellence than for a speaker to have that irresistible hold upon the assemblies of men, as by the charms of his eloquence to bend their minds to his own purposes, to lead them to whatever direction he chooses, or dissuade them from whatever he pleases. (Vide Chap. I.)

*2. *For it was not* merely to confer a mark of his favor, that Alexander the Great preferred the pencil of Apelles, or the chissel of Leusippus, to those of others, but that he knew full well that their art would throw a lustre upon his own name, as well as upon themselves.

*3. *Yet* the blind fury of Catiline not only received no check or diminution, but he was now daily forming and meditating new machinations; he now occupied himself in establishing new depots of arms in the most commodious places of Italy; he now took up all the money he could upon his own credit, or that of his friends, and had it conveyed to Fæsulæ into the hands of a certain Manlius, who became afterwards one of the principal conductors of the war.

4. *But* the enjoyment of ease was *not* granted us to devote our time to these liberal arts, though we earnestly wished and desired it.

Thus also the ancients more frequently use *neque verò quisquam*, for *nemo verò* : *neque verò quidquam*, for *nihil verò* : and *neque enim quisquam*, *neque tamen quisquam*, for *nemo enim*, *nemo tamen*.

Nam cum, *etenim cum*, at the beginning of a sentence are more frequently used than *cum enim*.

EXAMPLE.

For when he had left me no other alternative than to swear : I then in a solemn and elevated voice uttered that true and most gratifying oath ; which the people with an unanimous acclamation swore that I had most truly uttered.

After *quid aliud*, *nihil aliud*, it is more elegant to use *nisi* than *quàm* : as,

I ask *nothing else* in my own right, *than* that you write to me :

Nihil aliud a te jure meo postulo, nisi ad me ut scribas.

EXAMPLES.

1. *What else* is it not to answer the letters of a friend, *than* to neglect his friendship.

2. *Nothing else* is obtained by so obstinate and bloody a war *but* defeat and disgrace.

Nisi should also be used instead of *præter*, *præterquam*, after a negation.

EXAMPLE.

What the Pythian oracle declared, that *no other* cause, *except* avarice, should destroy Sparta, it seems to have predicted not only to the Lacedemonians, but to all other opulent nations.

Quod si, and *quod nisi* are often put for *si*, and for *si non*, at the beginning of a sentence, when the subject of both sentences has an immediate connexion : as,

If you have to do with this man, you will soon perceive that I complained justly of him :

Quod si tibi res cum isto sit, tum sentias, me jure de illo questum.

EXAMPLES.

1. He declared that he would no longer lend his assistance to the senate, in their proceedings (*grassanti*) against the people ; that he would interfere if they persevered in their former tyranny ; *but if* they thought that he could be as cruel as the senators, that he would go away with his soldiers, and no longer be present at their civil broils.

2. Thus in these perilous times, he not only preserved himself, but he was the chief protection of his dearest friend. *If* a pilot is entitled to the highest praise, who saves a vessel from a storm, and a dangerous sea ; should he not be esteemed of an extraordinary prudence, who has reached a secure haven from so many and such overwhelming civil tempests ?

*3. How inconsistent would it be, upon seeing a statue or a painting, to be convinced that it was the production of art, and on the distant view of the navigation of a vessel, to entertain no doubt but that it was guided by the combined powers of skill and wisdom, or on the contemplation of a sun-dial, or clock, to know that they point out the hours by means of art, and not by mere chance ; but at the same time to think the world, which both displays the perfections of these arts, and

contains in itself the artists themselves, to be a mass destitute of plan, wisdom, or contrivance? *If any one* should carry into Scythia or Britain that sphere which our friend Posidonius lately made, which describes the same revolutions in the sun, the moon, and the five planets, which are performed each day and night in the heavens, is there a man even amongst those barbarous people who would have a single doubt but that the sphere was perfected by a wonderful effort of art?

Instead of *quod attinet ad id quod*, and which the English itself renders by *as to what*, it is more elegant simply to use *quod*.

EXAMPLE.

As to what some men have thought that the soul itself will one day perish, they are most egregiously mistaken.

And on the contrary, the best writers do not use *quod ad* with the accusative, for *as to*, *in regard to*, but always *quod attinet*, *quod spectat ad*: as, *As to you*; *quod ad vos attinet*.

EXAMPLE.

As to you, I never saw a man more perniciously prodigal.

In stating an objection, instead of saying, *at objici possit*, *objiciat quis*, &c. it will be sufficient simply to make use of *at*, and the answer may be made with, or even without *at*.

EXAMPLES.

1. In this I have often been struck with admiration at the dignity, the justice, and the wisdom manifested by Cæsar.—

He always uses the most honorable names towards Pompey. *But some one will say*, that he showed the most persecuting and vindictive spirit towards his person. *But* these were the deeds of arms, and the insolence of victory, and not of Cæsar.

2. *Yet you will say*, that it was I who advised him to it; as if he could not have done a service to his country, without an adviser. *But again you will object* that I rejoiced at it. What, amidst such universal joy, was there any reason why I should be the only rejected person in Rome?

In the connexion of several arguments, the Latins do not enumerate them by *primò*, *secundò*, *tertiò*, &c. but by *primùm*, *deinde*, *tum*, *denique*, *postremó*; and instead of those words of enumeration, as *tum*, *præterea*, *insuper*, &c. other forms of connexion may be used, as, *accedit quod*; *ut taceam*, *omittam*, &c.

EXAMPLE.

We must *first* consider, that our kindness should hurt nobody; *secondly*, that it should not be above our faculties; *thirdly*, that it may be exercised with dignity; and *lastly*, attended with the greatest honesty.

CHAPTER IV.

OF THE SIMPLE VARIATION OF WORDS.



AS nothing contributes more to elegance of style than a change or variation of words, to which the scholar should be early introduced, we shall briefly show how it may be effected. This variation is either simple, and consists in the mere change of one word into another synonymous word or phrase, or it is rhetorical or ornamental, as by the accession of another expression, more full, dignified, or smooth, the simple idea receives greater ornament, and by this metaphorical and circuitous manner, assumes the form of a period. But we shall not treat so fully of this last, till we come to speak of perspicuity and copiousness. Thus, to give an example of a simple variation by means of a synonymous phrase :

Ingenium est omnium hominum à labore proclive ad libidinem.—Ter.

May be varied thus :

Ea est omnium mortalium idoles ut à labore ad voluptatem ruant.

Thus again, to show the ease with which a sentence may be almost infinitely varied :

In hoc *natura* efficere quid possit videtur experta.

Try the word *natura* in other cases :

In the genitive :

In hoc *naturæ* quanta vis sit, satis perspectum est.

In the dative :

Naturæ quid efficere liceat, in hoc compertum est.

In the accusative :

Naturam, quid efficere possit, experiri voluisse arbitror.

In the ablative :

In hoc quid à *naturâ* effici possit, compertum est.

An adjective may be changed into a substantive : as,

He reproaches his legs for being *too slender* :

Crurum nimiam tenuitatem vituperat.

EXAMPLES.

1. He was sufficiently *eloquent, liberal, versed* in civil law, as well as the military art.—(Say *habebat enim*....)

2. *How senseless* must you think yourselves, who, while you possess the real comforts and blessings in life, harrass your minds with phantoms of imaginary evils, and instead of enjoying the substantial gifts of fortune, torture yourselves with the apprehension of future calamities, which are never likely to happen ?

3. If I had not opposed *this rash man* with all the energy of virtue and fortitude, where is the man who would not have thought that all the firmness I displayed during my Consulship, had been more the effect of chance than of wisdom.

4. In the complaint I then made, mournful and wretched as it was, though unavoidable by me, in that station to which I had been raised, what was there in the least abusive? Did I not speak with moderation? *Yet how temperate* must that man be, who, complaining of him, could abstain from abuse?

And in the same manner an adjective may be elegantly put in the neuter gender, and its substantive in the genitive case: as, instead of *hanc laudem consecutus es*, say *hoc laudis*. . . .

EXAMPLES.

1. The sun imparts *the same light* and heat to all these nations.

2. You have *this nobility*, and I shall always pay you *that deference*.

3. Our friendship has *so much weight* with me that there is nothing which I would not willingly undertake for its sake.

4. I shall chiefly devote to writing *whatever time* the intrigues of my enemies, the causes of my friends, or the interests of the public shall allow me.

Two substantives are often put for one; each however having its proper force and meaning; for they are not redundant, but are intended to give greater perspicuity or harmony to the sentence: as instead of *offendere hominem*, we shall say *offendere animum hominis*, because it is his mind which is offended; and *offendere hominem* might be mistaken for, *to find a man*. We shall be more accurate in saying *gladi mucrone ictus*, than *gladio*. Thus Cicero uses *vis Deorum, ratio fiduciæ, veritatis necessitas naturæ, res ratio-*

num. But though *Dii, fiducia, veritas, natura, rationes*, might have been sufficient, still we must suppose that the other substantives convey a peculiar meaning to give more force to the others.

EXAMPLES.

1. How wise and fortunate are they, who by a happy alchymy of mind can turn even the most disagreeable circumstances of life to pleasure and advantage. Thus even sores and diseases may benefit *a man*, though they are attended even with excruciating pains.

2. Say now that you were over-reached by him who refused such an immense sum of money not on account of his *indolence*, but on account of his *magnificence*.—(Here *inertiam laboris* may be used, and followed by *magnificentiam liberalitatis*, for the sake of that *conciinnitas*, or equality of the clauses, which we shall mention afterwards.)

3. The whole *senate* (the state or condition of) the judiciary proceedings, the whole commonwealth itself has undergone a revolution.

*4. Nor can any thing so ruinous or destructive befall the destinies of mankind, as for *truth*, integrity, honor, and religion, to be banished or rejected by this honorable body.

5. The other maintains, that death was not designed by the immortal Gods as a punishment, but is either imposed upon us by *nature*, or intended as a cessation of our toils and miseries, so that the wise never suffer it unwillingly; that bonds and imprisonment, especially if perpetual, are contrived for the punishment of detestable crimes.

The pronoun personal may be rendered by the pronoun substantive.

EXAMPLE.

Though Cæsar had never been *my* friend, but had always shown a disinclination to me, though he had slighted my friend-

ship, and acted the part of an implicable enemy towards me, yet after the great things he has done, and still continues to do, I could not help loving him.

It may be observed that the dative acquisitive is often elegantly used instead of the genitive.

EXAMPLE.

When they heard that he had been condemned unheard, they threw themselves at *the judge's feet*, and prayed that he might be saved from the gallows.

The English adjective may be sometimes rendered by a substantive, and the word with which it agrees be put in the genitive case : as,

You will easily judge *how few orators* there are and have been :

Facillimè quanta oratorum sit, semperque fuerit paucitas, judicabis :

Instead of. *Quàm pauci*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Ancient friendship*, the dignity of the man, and my constant practice through life, jointly called upon me to defend him.

2. *A good voice*, though it is very desirable, is not in our power to acquire, but to exercise and improve it, is certainly in the power of every man.

3. No one could resist the *brave Hercules*.

This variation generally takes place when

the chief stress lies upon the adjectives, as implying a cause, reason, or something like it ; we would not say, *coximus bonitatem panis . . .* or *locutus sum cum doctrinâ viri.*

A substantive may be changed into a verb by a periphrasis : as,

Nor could I foresee *that accident* :

Neque quod accidit, prævidere poteram.

EXAMPLES.

1. Nor did I prognosticate *those events*, when I said they would happen ; but I was only urged by my fears, lest they should happen ; when I considered the possibility of them, and at the same time foresaw their pernicious tendency, if they should happen.

*2. For when by reason of the adjournment of the Comitia, I found myself thrice chosen first Prætor by all the centuries, it was easy for me from thence to collect both what *your sentiments* of me were, and what qualifications you required in others.

*3. When we consider the benefits we have received from *our parents*, who in our helpless infancy watched over us with the tenderest affection, and whose cares and anxieties attended us in our entrance into the world, should they not command every return of filial duty and affectionate regard.

4. But I make this concession to you, that you may pass over those things which, *from your silence*, you allow not to exist.

But above all a SUPERLATIVE will admit of many different modes of variation.

A superlative is elegantly changed into a

comparative, with a negative, especially with the pronoun relative, *qui, quæ, quod* ; as,

A most courteous and learned man :

Vir quo non alius humanior, quo non doctior alter.

EXAMPLES.

1. He was *most eminent*, and indeed unparalleled in his virtues and vices.—(Say, *nihil fuit.*)

2. Plato, *who was the most ingenious and learned* of men, laid it down as a maxim, that those republics would enjoy a lasting happiness, whose government was in the hands of the wise and the learned.

3. The mind of that man, *whom we call the most fortunate*, is sometimes corroded by secret cares and troubles, which are concealed from the observation of other men ; thus the canker-worm, though invisible to the eye, often destroys the bud of the rose, *which is the fairest of flowers.*

Observe that *quo* is more elegantly used with a comparative than *ut*, to express the purpose.

EXAMPLES.

1. He paid his debts, *that* he might lead a *happier* life.

2. We broke open the seal, *that* we might detect the conspirators the *more easily*.

Or it may be rendered comparatively, with an affirmative, either by an interrogative or a repetition of the words : as,

A most courteous man :

Vir humanus, si quisquam omninò humanus.

Or : *Quis, or, quid hoc viro humanior, or humanius ?*

EXAMPLES.

1. Believe me, your brother is a *most studious* man.
 2. Cræsus was the *richest* man in the world; and yet neither his numerous forces, nor his riches, could avail any thing, against the attack of a small but disciplined army, inured to poverty and hardships.
-

A superlative receives an additional force, if its comparative is introduced with it, as having more power than the superlative; in this manner,

Plato a *most learned* man :
Plato quovis doctissimo doctior.

EXAMPLES.

1. In this, indeed, *I am more miserable than you*, because my calamity is accompanied with yours, and common to both.
 2. Farewell then, my friend, and be persuaded that you are *most dear* to my heart, but *much dearer* if you can receive any pleasure from these precepts and admonitions.
 3. Be persuaded that those are *the fairest* talents, which are employed for the good of others.
-

Cicero and the best writers often increase the force of the superlative by the addition of such expressions as these, *unus omnium, unus, sine controversiâ, apprimè, insigniter, egregiè*: as,
 You seem to me a *most choice and excellent* speaker :

Unus omnium in dicendo mihi videris lectissimus.

EXAMPLES.

1. I dare pronounce him to be *the most eminent* in the state for genius and industry.

2. I cannot even promise it to *that most learned and religious man*, and who enjoys your greatest favor and friendship.

3. Horace derived his delightful urbanity from the society of Mæcenas, *that most polite of all men*, and from the court of Augustus, *that best school of all true elegance*.

The variation of the superlative may be elegantly made by these verbs, *contendere, certare, superare*, or by *cedere*; as,

Cicero was *the most eloquent* of orators:

Nemo oratorum cum Cicerone contendere audet eloquentiâ.

EXAMPLES.

1. Your brother is the *greatest lover* of literature that ever was.

2. Those who love and cultivate the liberal arts, are always *the most humane and courteous* of men.

3. Alexander the Great was *the most ambitious* of heroes, who is even said to have wept, because he had no other world to conquer.

The superlative may also be elegantly varied by these forms, *tam* followed by *quàm, qui*, or *tam, quàm qui maximè*; by *adeò, ità ut*; *tantus, quantus*; *æquè* or *perindè, atque*: as,

This man possesses the greatest humanity:

Humanitas in hoc viro tam magna, quàm quæ maxima: or,

Haud est quisquam omnium æquè humanus, atque hic vir, &c.

EXAMPLES.

1. Nero was *the most cruel* tyrant that ever lived.

2. He fought with *unparalleled* bravery, and overcame the enemy.

3. The letters, which he sent to the senate, were *the most elegant* that can be conceived.

4. The study of physic is *very*, or *the most*, useful.

In these different forms something must be added, which the judgment of the scholar will easily suggest : as, *Tantus, quantus, nunquam antea : adeò, ut nihil supra ; ut nulla fieri possit accessio, nihil addi possit ; ut nulli sint conferendi, &c.*

Instead of *quo, eo, or quanto* before a comparative, a sentence may be elegantly varied by using *ut quisque* in the first part, and *ita* in the latter, with superlatives : as,

The more a man excels in greatness of soul, the more he wishes to be the first of men :

Ut quisque animi magnitudine maximè excellit, ita maximè vult omnium princeps esse.

EXAMPLES.

1. Thus for the future, *the more opulent* any man may be, *the greater enemy* he will appear to the Romans.

2. *The more abandoned* any man has been, *the safer* will he be.

3. *The more eloquent* any one is, *the more* he dreads the difficulties of speaking, the various turns and chances of his oration, and the expectation of men.

4. *The more diligently* a boy attends to his studies, *the more* learned he will be : *the better* a husbandman manures his land, and *with the greater* labor and care he ploughs his fields, *the more* plentiful crops they will yield.

Quot may be changed into *quantum*, and *tot* into

tantum, when they are meant to express not merely numbers, but magnitude.

EXAMPLE.

How many books you have ! If we were to estimate your knowledge by the size of your library, you must be thought the most learned man in the universe.

Quot may also be changed into *quotus quisque*, with a kind of exclamation indirectly expressive of paucity of numbers : as,

How many will believe this ?

Quotus quisque hoc credet ?

EXAMPLES.

1. Well may you commend their patriotism ; for *how many are there, who* will voluntarily lay down their lives for their country ?

2. *How many are there, who* can escape reports in a city so much addicted to scandal ?

Observe that the particle *enim* is elegantly inserted between *quotus* and *quisque*.

EXAMPLE.

For how few are there, who understand the art of numbers and measure ?

For *octodecim* and *novemdecim* it is more elegant to use *duodeviginti*, and *undeviginti*, and also, *duodexicesimus*, *undexicesimus*, *duodetriginta*, &c. and to express a large uncertain

number, the Latins generally use *secenties, centum, mille* and *sexcenties, millies, centies*.

An adjective and a participle are sometimes used for a substantive : as,

I saw him at his *departure* :

Vidi eum proficiscentem.

EXAMPLES.

1. Xenophon represents the elder Cyrus *at his death*, as expressing his belief of the soul's immortality.

2. Cato learnt the Greek language *in his old age*.

3. This he affirmed *in his life-time* ; and the wisdom, which distilled from his lips was so pleasing to my soul, that I shall retain and cherish his wholesome precepts as long as I live.

A substantive joined with the preposition *propter, ob, &c.* will be elegantly put in the case, which was to have been governed by the verb, the preposition left out, and the other substantive, which was to have been the case of the verb, will be put in the genitive ; as, instead of saying *invidere alicui ob divitias*, we shall say *invidere divitiis alicujus*.

EXAMPLES.

1. If you had succeeded in this business, I should have congratulated *you on your good fortune*.

2. If I speak with too much freedom, *I may be forgiven on account of my youth*.

3. And therefore this is the answer which I return to your letter, in which you would fain throw out some threats and invectives against me : I freely *forgive you for the concern* you express, and even commend you for it, for I have been taught by my own feelings the full force of fraternal affection.

And in the same manner a substantive joined with these prepositions *ob*, *propter*, *per*, &c. may by a kind of prosopopœia become the nominative case to the verb, the prepositions being left out: as for, You are become famous *on account of* your learning: say, your learning has rendered you famous.

EXAMPLES.

1. I shall attach myself to his most particular friends, and thus I shall insinuate myself into an intimacy with him, from which I have hitherto been *excluded on account of my great diffidence*.

2. I am now deprived of those comforts, to which *I had accustomed myself by nature, by inclination, and by habit*.

The pronoun *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, is often elegantly used for a preposition; as,

For the love that you bear me:

Qui tuus est erga me amor.

EXAMPLES.

1. There is no sorrow which the hand of time will not lessen and alleviate. But it would be beneath you to lay your whole hope and expectation on time, and not to exert yourself and make use of your own wisdom to apply the remedy to the wound you have received; and if departed spirits are endowed with any sense of perception, *from your daughter's love to you*, and her affection for all her friends and relatives, she must be highly displeased to see you so disconsolate.

2. *From his* great learning, it was expected that he would have written much better.

A verb, but chiefly an infinitive, is frequently

used for a substantive, and is often necessarily so, where the Latin noun either does not exist, or would be very inelegant: as,

Your desertion of the unhappy was most shameful:

Miseros deseruisse tibi turpissimum erat.

EXAMPLES.

*1. Instead of prying curiously into the lives of others, and censuring their conduct, we should judge ourselves with the greatest severity, and that will induce us to pardon venial offences, and to consider that *error* is the lot of human nature. (Begin by "we should judge ourselves," with *potiùs*, according to rule, p. 18.)

2. Though fortune should frown upon a man, yet *his great esteem* of virtue and the *preservation* of equanimity in the most arduous circumstances, will always render him cheerful, and even happy.

3. Thus you see *what small value those men* have for their body who regard their honor.

4. An *accurate knowledge* of the arts softens our manners.

It is often necessary to make use of a verb instead of adjectives, as in these instances: *Vix credi potest*, It is incredible. *Vix fieri potest*, It is impossible, &c.

EXAMPLES.

1. Though the Deity *is invisible* to man, yet when we consider the wonderful rapidity, with which the earth moves round its axis, and how constantly it performs its annual revolutions, when we see the fruits of the earth, the variety and the regular changes of the seasons, by which they are brought to maturity, and every thing provided for the use and conveniency of man, who will say that he does not perceive a divine being,

which rules, protects, and governs all things with infinite power and wisdom?

2. *It is indeed impossible* that I should be deceived in this business.

The word *totus*, to render it still more forcible, may be varied by *quàm longum est*; *quantus quantus est*; *quàm latè patet*; as,

The *whole* sea.

I passed the *whole* night without sleep.

This is *all* your own.

A verb is also, with great propriety, used for an adverb.

EXAMPLES.

1. You write much oftener than *usual*.

2. I was seized with such a dizziness, when I stood upon the brow of that edifice, that I *almost* or *nearly* fell—(*parum abfuerit*.)

3. I beg you not to suppose that I write to you less frequently than *formerly* from having forgotten you; but it arises from the very ill state of my health, from which, however, I am now recovering, or it is owing to my absence from Rome, so that I knew no one, who was going to you.

4. I cannot *possibly* read this book in the time allowed.

Non modò, followed by *sed etiam* may be varied by *tantum abest ut*, *ut*; or sometimes *non dicam*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Not only do I* not look upon philosophy as able to dis-

cover and point out the true method of living, and to be productive of perfect happiness, *but* I also think that no set of men stand so much in need of others to direct them how to live, as these pretenders to philosophy.

2. No flow of genius, no force of eloquence, no power of description are sufficient *not only* to embellish, *but even* to recount your exploits.

The verb *oportet* may be varied by *non possum non*.

EXAMPLES.

1. They *must* indeed live in the greatest prodigality, who while they are squandering their property, entertain the hopes of possessing ours.

2. *I was obliged* to give you this advice.-

Verbs, and particularly participles, are often used for prepositions, as *privatus*, *instructus*, *præditus*, *ornatus*, &c. as,

A soldier will scarcely fight *without* armour :

Miles carens, or, *non instructus armis vix pugnabit*.

For *sine*.

Though a man should possess all the advantages of power and fortune, though whole nations should obey his nod, and thousands should offer him the incense of adulation, yet how could he lead a happy and a pleasant life *without* friends ?

For *cum*.

1. When his fair promises had lulled us into security, and we were enjoying the slumbers of quiet repose, after the fatigues of the day, he came suddenly upon us *with* a great troop of soldiers, and surprised us in our tents.

2. He has retired into the country, and now lives quiet and content, having married a woman *with* a great deal of money.

For *ob*, *propter*.

Here these participles *ductus*, *impulsus*, *motus*, *permotus*, *impeditus*, *perterritus*, *coactus*, &c. are elegantly introduced : as,

He betook himself to another quarter *through*, or *on account of*, his poverty :

Egestate coactus aliò se contulit.

*1. They, who from mere patriotic motives, drag forth any man before the tribunal of public justice, neither *through* private injury, nor private pique, nor *through* any hope of reward, should seriously consider beforehand not merely what cares and difficulties they must undergo for the present, but also the troubles and anxieties they reserve to themselves for the remainder of their lives.

2. Thus this great and illustrious man was put to the most cruel death by a ruffian, stained with crimes of the blackest die, and he, whom his enemies had spared on account of his worth and dignity, met with his death from the hands of a pretended friend : however, I proceeded directly to his tent, where I found two of his freedmen and a few of his slaves : they said the rest had fled *through* fear, when they saw their master murdered just before his tent.

3. *On account* of these considerations, and the authority and persuasions of Orgetorix, they resolved to prepare every thing necessary for an expedition.

For *post*.

1. *After supper* he went to bed. (*Cænatus.*)

2. Truth *after long oppression*, will at length emerge, and shine forth the brighter.

3. My gratitude will be due to you even *after your death*.

To this also belong ablatives absolute.

1. This happened *after the death* of your father.

2. *After this battle*, he resolved not to admit them to any

terms of peace, since they had behaved with so much duplicity and treachery.

For *in, ex.*

1. *In his way* through the maritime states, he visited the Veneti, and after having passed the river Ligeris, he came among the Gauls, with whom he staid some time, and then returned to the Roman province.

2. The old man was sitting *in his gown*, when having approached him respectfully we saluted him.

3. *From experience* of the same misfortune, I have learned to commiserate your fate, and will do my best endeavours to relieve your distress.

A substantive is often used instead of a conjunction or a preposition.

EXAMPLES.

1. Some were of opinion that they were forthwith to be received and assisted; others that they were to be esteemed *as* rebels, and unworthy of help. (Say, *loco.*)

2. Such an eagerness to repair their dishonor seized the whole army, that nobody needed the command of either tribune or centurion; and every one, even *as* a punishment, imposed upon himself labors extraordinary.

3. Because there had been an alarm in the night before Cæsar's camp, they took it *for* an argument, that there could be no stealing out without discovery.

An adverb is often used for a substantive: as,
To speak *with subtilty and evasion*:
Subtiliter et versutè dicere.

EXAMPLES.

1. *With what prudence and dispatch* did he transact this business!

2. He read that book with *so much earnestness* that he seemed to devour its contents.

3. *With truth*, I can say, that if you consider the difficult service he had to perform, the obstinate resistance of the enemy, and the disadvantages of an intricate country, he conducted the army with great *consideration* and *circumspection*.

And especially *ita*, followed by *si* or *ut*, is often used for *on that condition, with such an effect, restriction*.

EXAMPLES.

1. It is very expedient that there should be many accusers in a state, that terror may restrain insolence and audacity ; *with this restriction*, however, it is expedient, that we do not become the sport and victims of wanton accusations.

*2. This difference of opinion in our discussions being carried on till night, the sitting was adjourned, and I happened that evening to sup with Pompey ; I was pleased with this seasonable opportunity, more than any one I had ever enjoyed, because since your departure, this had been to us the most favorable and honorable day in the senate ; I therefore spoke to him *with such an effect*, that I seemed to turn the mind of my man from every other consideration to promoting and defending your dignity.

3. I know that you will use every means in your power to be with us as soon as possible ; I desire it, however, on *this condition*, that you do not make too much haste.

Undé is very frequently used for *à quo, à quel, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

1. The man, *from whom* you came, is a very honest man.

2. The circumstance, *from which* you set out, is so well known to all, that it needs no further consideration.

Prepositions are often changed one for another.

EXAMPLES.

Ob, for *antè*, is often used.

To place *before* one's eyes.

Præ for *antè*.

Driving a herd *before* him, he had passed the river in swimming.

Prò for *antè*.

1. Had he not in the hearing of the people, sitting *before* the temple of Castor, said that no one could conquer, but he who had conquered?

2. Cæsar stationed the legions *before* the entrenchment.

Per for *in*.

1. The war from the Sabines was by far the greatest, for they did nothing *in* heat or anger, nor did they make show of war *before* they were seen in the field.

2. He said so *in* joke.

Per for *propter*.

I cannot do that *on account of* my ill-health.

E or *ex* for *in*.

The Celtæ assailed the town Titurium with great violence *in* their way.

Prò for *in*.

Whether a greater injury can be offered to a prince, you *in* your prudence judge.

Apud for *in*.

He was a wise son *in* Plutarch who, being told by a friend that his father would disinherit him, answered, he will do nothing but what he should do.

Observe that Cicero never uses the phrases *in laudem*; *in honorem*: the best writers will say *honoris gratiâ*; *laudis gratiâ*.

A or *ab* for the English particle *of*.

1. Let us go under that shade, to avoid the heat *of* the sun.

2. Cares are conversant in palaces: they fear not the glittering *of* gold.

3. He was *of* the bed-chamber to three kings successively.
4. She is not afraid *of* the snow.

Ad for *circiter*, speaking of uncertain numbers : but chiefly as an adverb without any case.

1. When he was *about* fifteen years old.
2. *About* four thousand men were slain.

A or *ab* for *post*.

After these injunctions he dismissed the assembly.

Secundùm for *post*.

After which games only a few days elapsed.

Prò for *secundùm*.

He lives *according* to his dignity.

De for *secundùm*.

According to my opinion.

Ex for *secundùm*.

He has done every thing *according* to law.

Ad for *secundùm*.

Triflers and deceivers who speak every thing *according* to their inclination, but nothing *according* to truth.

Modern writers very commonly use *juxta* instead of *secundùm* ; but very improperly : as, according to Livy ; according to Sallust : *Juxta Sallustium*, &c. It should be, *Secundùm Sallustium*, or *teste Sallustio*, &c.

Prò for *ob* or *propter*.

Do this *on account* of the friendship that has long subsisted between us.

Præ for *ob*.

I cannot speak *for*, or *on account of* my tears.

Ad for *ob*.

The senate had voted new levies *on account of* the report of the impending war.

A preposition may be used for a substantive.

EXAMPLES.

A for *à parte*.

1. He stood *on my side*.

2. The army stood firm *on the side of* the infantry.

Ad for *in regard to*; *by reason of*; *in comparison of*.

1. I will follow another course less severe indeed *in regard to* the criminal, but more useful *with regard to* the public safety.

2. We know him to be a good man, and not illiterate, but nothing *in comparison of* Persius.

Præ and *prò* for *in comparison of*; *in respect of*; *in proportion to*.

1. Our littleness, *in comparison of* the bigness of their bodies, is matter of contempt with most of the Gauls.

2. The King, *in consideration of* his royal dignity, and *in respect of* his services, was most unworthily treated.

3. Education is generally the worse, *in proportion to* the wealth and grandeur of the parents.

Conjunctions are often changed one for another.

EXAMPLES.

Cum for *postquam*.

It is not yet 110 years ago, *since* Lucius Piso got a law to be enacted against the corruption of magistrates.—(This might also be rendered by *ex quo*.)

Observe that instead of saying *die antequàm venit*, on the day before he came; or *die postquam venit*, on the day after he came; we elegantly say, *pridie quàm venit*, and *postridie quàm venit*.

Usque eo for *adeò*.

Dionysius the tyrant, being banished Syracuse, kept a school at Corinth. So impossible was it for him to live without empire.

Usque adeò and *usque for adeò*.

Some men are so possessed with ambition, that they are not content to have lived magnificently, unless they also are buried so.

Ut for *nam, et*, when preceded by *tam, ita, tantus, &c.* : this is done in order to draw sentences closer together, when the one clause is the effect or the consequence of the other, as we have seen before.

EXAMPLES.

1. I am in the greatest perplexity and terror, *and* I know neither what to do, nor which way to turn myself.

2. How could I be so inhuman, *and* refuse you your request.

3. On the arrival of this detachment, a great change was produced in our favor, *for* many of the soldiers, who before lay oppressed with wounds, now resuming courage, and supporting themselves with their shields, renewed the engagement.

Instead of *quidem* followed by *sed* or *tamen*, the Latins more frequently use *etsi, quanquam, licet, &c.* as,

We cannot *indeed* do every thing, but we must use every exertion :

Etsi omnia non efficere possimus, tamen omnes nervos intendere debemus.

EXAMPLES.

*1. I *indeed* am least of all fitted to offer you any consolation, since I have been so much affected by your distresses, as myself to stand in need of comfort ; *however*, as there is still some difference between my own sorrow and that bitterness of woe, with which your heart is wrung, I felt that it would show a want of friendship, and of that regard, which I have always expressed for you, to observe a silence of indifference in your great afflictions.

2. I myself, *indeed*, who am desirous of administering comfort to you, stand in the greatest need of consolation, because nothing of late has affected me more than your misfortune ;

however, I not only most earnestly exhort you, but entreat and conjure you by the ties of our mutual friendship that you would be collected, show yourself a man, and consider on what conditions life was given us, and in what times we were born.

There are other kinds of variation, which we shall just slightly mention, but which are chiefly by figures of rhetoric.

EXAMPLES.

An affirmative speech into a negative.—*Prudentia est rara, non vulgaris.*

An affirmative word into a double negative. *Non indoctus* for *doctus*; *nemo non* for *omnis*; *non nihil* for *aliquid*; *non temnendus* for *præclarus*.

But these negatives have sometimes more force than the affirmatives, and are used by the figure Litotes; as Livy calls Polybius *no contemptible author*. As we say, *I have not brought you the most welcome news*: that is, *very melancholy news*. But the use of these will depend upon the subject and the judgment of the scholar; for sometimes we are obliged to make use of a negative, because either the affirmative does not exist, is inelegant, or obsolete: as,

We must say, *non facîle*, because *difficulter* seldom exists; *non sine causâ*, because more elegant than *cum causâ*.

The antecedent for the consequent:—as, *vixit* for *mortuus est*; *fuit Ilium* for *ruit*; *conferre signa* for *pugnare*.

The consequent for the antecedent.—*Hic me nunquam irridebit* for *non me decipiet*; speaking

of a great man, *ornat nostram urbem* for *habitat in urbe*; for *mori*, *caremus ejus consuetudine*, &c.

Cause for the effect.—*Mars* for *bellum*; *vis Martis* for *belli*; *ferrum* for *gladius*; *mens* for *cogitationes*; *anima* for *vita*, &c.

Effect for the cause.—*Cadere* for *interfici in prælio*, &c.

By the same Metonymia, the containing for the contained.—*Urbs lætatur* for *homines*; *domus* for *familia*; *literæ* for *omnis doctrina*, &c.

A synecdoche of the member, or of the whole: as, *pater est sepultus*, or *patris corpus est sepultum*.

The genus for the species: as, *mortalis* for *homo*; *orator eloquentissimus* for *Cicero*.

The species for the genus.—'This is chiefly used in proverbial expressions: as, *Punica fides* for *perfidia*; *Romano more loqui* for *liberè, apertè*, &c.

This variation, if not carried to too great a length, is very elegant, and tends very much to exercise the genius, and improve the judgment.

Thus, this simple idea, "from ease men fall into luxury," may be varied by means of figures of rhetoric:

By Asyndeton:—*Omnes homines ab otio ad luxuriam, libidinem, lasciviam præcipiti cursu ruunt*.

By Anaphora:—*Nihil est hominibus otiosis ad luxuriam, nihil ad lasciviam, nihil ad libidinem ac voluptatem proclivius*.

By a Climax:—*Ea hominum penè omnium est indoles, ut ab otio in luxuriam, ab hæc in lasciviam, atque ab eâ denique in fœdissimas libidines non gradu, sed præcipiti cursu ferantur*.

The chief, and the most useful of these figures is Metaphor, which indeed often creeps imperceptibly into the style, without the difficulty of searching for it. By its means there is nothing for which a suitable name or description may not be discovered. Metaphor is shorter than a comparison, because, instead of comparing, it is transformed into the thing itself. Comparison is, when a man has done any thing *like* a Lion; Metaphor, when it is said of the man, he *is* a Lion. So that Metaphor may be defined, the omission of the particle of comparison, as *tanquam, velut, quasi*. This trope or change of a word or idea from its proper and simple meaning into another corresponding to it, must be such that it may be easily understood that the subject is merely varied without losing its original force. Thus, the literal idea:—Intemperance causes death: Metaphorically, *Intemperantia est mater mortis*; instead of saying, *quasi mater*.

Sapientia est fons benè dicendi.

In vere ætatis perit

CHAPTER V.

COPIOUSNESS OF STYLE.

WE do not mean here that copiousness of style, which constituted the greatest part of Cicero's eloquence, as applied to oratory: but

limiting it wholly to our present purpose, we shall here include in its meaning scarcely any thing more than the mere substitution, or the addition of one or more words and expressions to the sentence, in order to render it more perspicuous and fuller, but not too verbose: For instance, if it was necessary to give more strength to the style instead of simply saying *minari*, we might make use of this metaphor, *spirare minas*; instead of *amare*, we might say *amore flagrare*, &c. In aid of it, however, arguments, comparisons, testimonies, and examples, may sometimes be introduced; but this copiousness would become ridiculous, if it did not tend to render the ideas and the whole subject more forcible and perspicuous. In this case, when properly applied, it becomes a most necessary part of elegance.

Where one word is added to another, which might have been sufficient of itself, care must be taken that the latter differs in some degree from the former, that it gives weight to it, and tends to explain and confirm it, as it would be wrong to join two words of the same meaning, or perfectly synonymous, as *edere* and *vesci*.

Cause and effect are often joined together, where either might be sufficient; as,

I saw him *in a passion*:

Iratum vidi, pallidum, rubicundum.

EXAMPLES.

1. For may I never enjoy, in conjunction with you, the benefit of my country's safety, if the eagerness which I show in

this case, proceeds from any severity of temper, (for no man has less of it) but from pure *humanity* and *clemency*.—(Here *clemency* is the effect of *humanity*, and therefore not synonymous, though either of the two might have been sufficient.)

*2. If indeed, my lords, the commonwealth, which owes its preservation to my labors, and the dangers I have encountered in its behalf, had not the power by its own dignity to revive my own *firmness of mind* and *constancy*; yet nature has implanted that principle within us, that we cannot but hate most cordially the man, who has always been the object of our fears, with whom we have often struggled for the preservation of our lives and fortunes, and whose dark intrigues we have with difficulty avoided.—(Here *constancy* and *firmness of mind* are properly joined together, as the one is the effect of the other.)

The antecedent and the consequent.

EXAMPLES.

1. See you not how those men, who, according to the tradition of poets, have inflicted a most awful punishment upon their mothers, from the pious wish of avenging the deaths of their fathers, even though they are said to have acted in obedience to the express commands and oracles of the Gods, are nevertheless continually harrassed and *agitated* by the furies, *nor suffered to remain in one place*, since it was impossible for them to listen to the voice of nature in one case, without an act of the greatest impiety in the other.—(Here, *suffered to remain in one place*, is added as the consequent of *agitated*, to give greater force, though the sense and the idea might have been complete without it.)

2. For nature, methinks, has *begotten* and *formed* us for greater purposes; I may be possibly mistaken, but this is my firm conviction: nor can I think that Torquatus, who first was distinguished by that honorable name, either tore off the collar from the enemy with a view to the pleasure and gratification he would receive from it, or engaged with the Latins at Vesperis in his third consulship, merely from motives of pleasure.

*3. But we chiefly arraign and think those persons entitled to our just abhorrence, who being *allured* and *corrupted* by the blandishments of present pleasures, and entirely blinded by their passions, take no precautions whatever against the mis-

fortunes and troubles which await them ; and equally blameable are they, who, from weakness of mind, and in order to escape some few pains and troubles, neglect and forsake the duties of their station.

The parts are often joined with the whole, the species with the genus, if they tend to give weight to the idea : as, when Cicero, wishing merely to say that he had bid adieu to public business, says, *Nam omnem nostram de republicâ curam, cogitationem de dicendâ in senatu sententiâ, commentationem causarum, abjecimus.*

EXAMPLES.

1. All foreign wars of *kings, nations, and countries*, are now extinguished, so that we are now at liberty, without wounding our national honor, to treat with those, whom we suffer to enjoy repose.

2. The whole *senate, the fathers and the equestrian order*, fixed their eyes and their whole attention upon *thee, thy countenance, and thy whole demeanor.*

*3. The oration of C. Gracchus, who possessed the finest genius, and had the greatest powers of eloquence of any man, is still extant, and is replete with charges of the most flagitious nature against L. Piso, a man of that *virtue and integrity*, that even in those times, when it was difficult to find an unprincipled man, he had singly the appellation of ‘the Virtuous’ bestowed upon him.

Two words joined together, the latter of which is stronger than the former ; as, *puto et mihi persuadeo, velim credas tibi que persuadeas* : this contributes greatly to give dignity to the sentence ; as,

This must greatly rouse and exasperate your minds :

Quod maximè vestros animos excitare atque inflammare debet.

EXAMPLES.

1. And because you have always felt a greater thirst for glory, and passion for fame than other nations, you must wipe out that stain contracted in the last war, which *has fixed a blot, an indelible blot* on the reputation of the Roman people; that the man, who in one day, by the contents of a single letter, marked out the Roman citizens to *slaughter* and to *butchery*, has yet received no punishment adequate to the atrocity of the deed.

2. The praises of our fleets shall ever be recorded and celebrated for the wonders performed at Tenedos; where the enemy's ships were sunk, and their commanders slain; such are *our trophies*, such are *our monuments*, such are *our triumphs*.

It is scarcely credible how fond the ancients were of joining words almost synonymous, and whose difference is scarcely perceptible. This copious accumulation of words is scarcely pardonable, except in a diffuse subject, as in oratory, where the speaker, being carried away by his emotions, often heaps together more words than are necessary.

When this takes place, it will contribute to the force of the sentence, not to admit any conjunctions between those words: as,

From our desires are hatred, dissensions, differences, seditions, and fightings:

Ex cupiditatibus odia, dissidia, discordiæ, seditiones, bella nascuntur.

EXAMPLES.

1. You attempt, you contrive, you set on foot nothing, of which I have not timely information; yet you cease not to concert and enterprize! How often has that dagger been

wrested out of thy hands? How often, by some accident, *has it fallen, has it dropped* before the moment of execution?

2. This countenance, which is the tacit language of the mind, *drove men into this error*: It was this countenance, which *deceived, which led into mistake, which betrayed* those, who did not know him.

3. To all who have *preserved, assisted, benefitted, and exalted* their country, there is a certain place set apart in the heavens.

It will sometimes give elegance and copiousness to the style, to make two substantives of one: when the substantive is put in the genitive, and another is added, which communicates another idea to it, tending at the same time to explain and illustrate the former, and indicates the part, attribute, or the cause of it; as for, *tu me reddidisti sapientem*, may be said, *tua præcepta, consilia reddiderunt*.

He deceived his keepers:

Custodum curam fefellit.

EXAMPLES.

1. I owe my present good fortune to *my father*: when I was reduced to the greatest indigence, I relied upon *him*, and he relieved *me*. (Here additional substantives illustrative of the subject may be given, as *liberality, affection, &c.*)

2. If a young man wishes to be distinguished in life, to be loved and respected, *he* ought to be early accustomed and initiated into the precepts and instructions of wisdom and virtue. (*animus.*)

3. Such was Q. Catulus, whom neither *danger* nor *honors* could move from his right course, uninfluenced by motives of hope or fear. (Here say the hour of danger, and breath of honors.)

A participle is often added to an ablative, to indicate the cause or motive why a thing is done,

though it is not expressed in English; care being at the same time taken, that the true signification of the participle be applicable to the subject; such as, *ductus, adductus, motus, impulsus, instructus, captus, delinitus, actus, victus, fretus, confisus*; or speaking negatively, *impeditus, prohibitus, deterritus*; as,

He fled *through fear* of the enemy :

Metu incitatus, or with greater force, *metu ic-tus ablatus, fugit*.

(This use of the participle is the same as the change of prepositions into participles, which we have seen above.)

EXAMPLES.

1. This nobleman, *from an aspiring ambition*, formed a conspiracy of the principal men of the state, and persuaded the people to quit the country in a body, representing that as they surpassed all the nations around them in valor, it would be easy for them to gain the entire sovereignty of Gaul.

2. Here when he had fallen into a deep slumber, *from the excess of eating and drinking*, a shepherd, who inhabited this part of the country, of the name of Cacus, a man of a fierce and gigantic stature, wishing to carry off this booty, *on account of the beauty* of the oxen, but knowing at the same time, that if he drove the herd into his cave, the very footsteps of the beasts would direct their keeper to the place of their concealment, dragged the most beautiful of them backwards by the tail into his den.

It will often render the style more copious and elegant to change the verb into a participle, and to add another verb bearing a stronger signification, especially where it expresses any event; as, for *miles gladio confossus est*, say, *gladio confossus cecidit*: as, *Captum tenere* for *cepisse*; *Ra-*

na rupto jacuit corpore: But as this mode is more peculiar to the poets, great caution is necessary in the use of it, that neither more nor less be said than is necessary: thus,

Our stoics *would entangle thee* in the toils of their disputations and questions:

Nostri stoici disputationum suarum atque interrogationum laqueis te irretitum tenerent: instead of *irretirent*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Could* then those powers of genius, which acquired so much power in the discovery of the liberal arts, ever *be blunted*? (Introduce another verb expressive of the consequences of being blunted, and put it in the tense in which *could be blunted* would have been.)

2. I am fully aware that men of the first celebrity for learning and wisdom have said and *written much* concerning the nature and power of the immortal Gods: (*scripta reliquisse*) and though what they have left us is most divinely written, yet it is of that nature that their knowledge must be derived from the information of our ancestors, and not what they could have taught them; for who is there so lost to reason, who, when he views the heavens, will not be convinced of the existence of a Deity? Or who will imagine that those things are the effect of chance, which were made with so much wisdom and design, as to defy the ingenuity of any man to comprehend their order and connexion?

3. For an innumerable multitude of slaves, which had been previously sent from all the adjacent towns, having been collected by this religious Ædile, on a sudden, upon a signal being given, *was let loose* upon the stage, from all the adjoining porticos and passages.—(Here *irrupit* may be added.)

4. The common report is, that the king, while he was turning over the Commentaries of Numa, discovered that certain mysterious and solemn sacrifices had been offered to Jupiter; and that he shut himself up to perform the same mysteries; but not having observed the proper care and due ceremonies, he was so far from witnessing the appearance of any heavenly objects, that *he was struck with lightning* by Jupiter, who was

highly provoked by this impious and superstitious rite.—(Here another verb expressive of the effects of *being struck with lightning* may be added, as, *was entirely consumed, &c.*)

It is usual with Cicero, and other elegant writers, to change the finite verb into an infinite, with the addition of another fit and appropriate verb: as, *puto, arbitror, constat, certum est, videtur, fatendum est, &c.* especially with the relative *qui, quæ, quod*: as, for *nihil pulchrius est virtute*, may be said, *nihil pulchrius virtute esse constat*. The same finite verb, as we have already mentioned, may be changed into a gerund; or if there is a substantive, into a participle future passive, with or without *esse*, with the addition of the same verbs, *puto, existimo, arbitror, statuo, video, &c.* but let it be observed, that the proper signification of these verbs must be applicable to the subject: as,

I have lost a father, who was a most learned man:

Patrem amisi, quem doctissimum fuisse, fatendum est.

EXAMPLES.

*1. Though *you have used* so much prudence in this business, that I cannot presume to find fault with it; not that I perfectly agree with you, but because *you evince* so much true wisdom, that I cannot prefer my judgment to your own; yet I have been induced, by an intimacy of such long standing, and by that benevolence, which I have experienced from your youth, to write to you what *must be conducive* to your welfare, and *was not derogatory* to your dignity.—(Here the verbs *intelligo, judico, arbitror, and duco* may be added.)

2. I have not that prejudice common to many, to deem it a crime to allow some small share of praise to the Gracchi,

by whose measures, wisdom, and laws, many useful establishments *have been formed*.

3. In our disputations upon this subject you generally differ from me, because, according to me, eloquence is comprised in the science and virtues of men of the first eminence in wisdom, whilst *you separate it* from the elegancies of learning, *and place it* in the mere acquirements of genius and application.—
(*puto*, with part. pass.)

4. *I have dedicated* my whole time to the concerns of my friends.

5. Lucullus followed him with his army into this prince's territories, where he found many nations ready to oppose him, from the dread they entertained of the Roman forces, though they were very far from *either provoking or attacking them*.

The repetition of the same word, when including the idea of a cause or argument, or opposition, will give greater force and copiousness to the sentence: as,

I beg you to forgive *your brother*:

Rogo te, ut frater fratri ignoscas.

EXAMPLES.

1. How could *you* deceive your *companion* and friend?

2. I am a Roman citizen; my name is C. Mucius; *my design was* to kill *an enemy*. (Of the two words repeated, one will be the nominative, and the other the case of the verb.)

Repetition of a word of opposite relation: as,
Canst thou hate thy wife?

An maritus uxorem odio habes?

EXAMPLE.

How could *you* kill your *son*? How could *you* have the barbarity to abuse *your father*?

Repetition of *omnis, multus*; as,

He dissipates the fears of *all*:

Omnes omnium metus pellit.

EXAMPLES.

1. The providence of God extends over the whole world, he provides *for the advantages of all*.

2. No one can doubt, but that *the property of all* must be in the power of those, who pass sentence, and of those, who judge.

3. Cicero's eloquence was admired, at the same time that it excited the envy of his adversaries; he freely undertook *the causes of many Romans*.

There is nothing more frequent among the ancients, especially Cicero, than circumlocution or periphrasis. It is of great use in the structure of a period, as it tends to vary, and to give it greater perspicuity and force. It will indeed require some thought and judgment to find out those variations, which are best adapted to the subject; for as they are singularly pleasing, and tend to illustrate and give greater animation to the style when properly used, so too great a dilatation, or too extended a circumlocution, where the occasion does not require it, must appear cold and puerile.

This circumlocution may be effected three different ways; by means of a definition, that is, either a shorter or larger description or explanation, by partition, and by comparison.

By definition, or explanation, especially by *qui, quæ, quod, &c.* as,

We ought to love our *relatives*:

Amare eos debemus, qui nobis vinculo cognationis conjuncti sunt.

EXAMPLES.

*1. The fifth mode of exciting compassion is to represent to the eyes each particular of distress, so that *the auditor* may

fancy that he views each object, and thus may be drawn in reality, as if he were present, and not merely by the force of language, to commiserate the distressed.

2. If you have any regard for me, continue in the enjoyment of this tranquility, and be persuaded that except offences and wickedness, from which you have always been, and always will be, exempt, nothing *horrible or formidable*, can happen to man.

3. We have had the superiority over you in one circumstance, that we were acquainted with the deliverance of Marcellus before you, and I may add too, that we were witnesses to the *mode of the whole transaction*,—(*quemadmodum*.)

By a more extended definition : as,

We do not bear arms against *children*, but against armed men :

Children here may be defined, that age which is usually spared, in taking of towns.

Arma habemus non adversùs eam ætatem, cui etiam in captis urbibus parcitur, sed adversùs armatos.

1. Oh the unparalleled instance of wisdom ! do they not seem to have dispatched and removed that man from the face of nature, whom they suddenly deprived of the light of the heavens, of the sun, of earth and water ; that since he had murdered *his own father*, he might be cut off from the enjoyment of those things, from which all comforts are derived.—(*His own father* here will admit of a larger periphrasis, *him to whom he owed his life*.—)

2. No one could suppose that *a parricide* could enjoy any sleep.—(Here *parricide* may be very fully defined, as, the man who had violated all divine and human laws, by, &c.)

To this may be referred several English expressions, adverbs and adjectives, which must necessarily be rendered by a short periphrasis : as, his speech was *irresistible* for its eloquence, say, his speech was so eloquent that.....Your language is *inexplicable*, &c.

Circumlocution secondly may be effected by partition, or division of a whole into parts, of a genus into species : as,

No where shall we have any just subject of alarm :

Non in campo, non in foro, non in curiâ, non denique intrâ domesticos parietes, pertimescemus.

EXAMPLES.

1. He promised me that he would afford me assistance *at all times*—(May be said whether in the morning or in the evening.)

2. The Romans, eager to revenge the massacre at Genabum, and exasperated by the obstinate defence of the place, spared *none of the inhabitants*: insomuch that of all that multitude, amounting to about forty thousand, scarce eight hundred, who had quitted the town upon the first alarm, escaped in safety to the camp.—(Say neither men, &c.)

Thus Cicero divides eloquence into genius, exercise in speaking, and knowledge of the liberal arts ; as,

If I have any abilities, and I am sensible they are but small ; if, by speaking often, I have acquired any merit as a speaker ; if I have derived any knowledge from the study of the liberal arts, which have ever been my delight, Licinius may justly claim the fruit of all.

Circumlocution is also very elegant where an idea is conveyed of multitude, magnitude, and excellence in general, when instead of the words *multus, valdè, &c.* we make use of a comparison, as for, *valdè te amo*, say, *non minùs te amo quam filius patrem*, or *itâ ut vix unquam fuerint qui simili amore cujusquam flagrarent* ; for, *doctissimus*, say, *est tam doctus ut nihil non intelligat, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

1. For in the senate I have always contended with him with the *greatest firmness* and *perseverance*, concerning the interests of the commonwealth.—(Cicero says, so that he might be convinced that he had to do with a man of firmness and perseverance.)

2. The study of literature has produced *infinite* advantages to mankind. (Say greater than can be derived from any thing else.)

3. Rome possessed *many* brave citizens. (As no other nation could ever boast of, &c.)

4. God confers daily and *great* benefits upon us.

In the selection of these additional words and expressions, which constitute copiousness of style, great care must be taken that they be appropriate and suited to the subject, not labored, trifling, nor without a correspondent meaning: otherwise a short and nervous diction would be preferable to a multitude of languid and unmeaning words. But as elegance of style, especially Ciceronian, consists, for the most part, in this copiousness of diction, which, as we have observed before, contributes so greatly to the structure of finished periods; I shall here give a few more rules to show how, by means of this copiousness, additional clauses, and even new ideas may be introduced to illustrate and adorn the style.

Speaking on a subject, which conveys the idea of any thing great, excellent, or manifest, a new idea may be introduced by either prefixing the cause, or subjoining the effect, with *ita*, *adèd*, *ut*, *tantus*, *tantum*, &c. Thus to give an instance of each: *The young man devotes whole days and*

nights to literature; by introducing the cause why he does it, an additional clause, and at the same time greater force may be given to the sentence; *adolescens tanto literarum studio tene-tur, ut dies noctesque det iis operam*. Or on the contrary, by introducing what on the first view appears the effect: as, *What you relate is noto-riously false*; *Res, quam narras, tam abhorret ab omni, veritatis specie, ut nemo non fidem tibi de-neget*.

EXAMPLES.

Cause:

1. Travellers, who have visited distant countries, are very fond of magnifying and extolling the curiosities they have seen, above those of their own country; nay, they are sometimes very fond of relating wonders, and *their tales and wonders can scarcely be believed*.—(They are so remote from the truth that.... might easily be inserted.)

*2. Who is there among us, who has not the liberty of walk-ing over his own farm, and visiting his agricultural arrange-ments, either for the sake of its improvement, or his own plea-sure? *No one indeed can be ignorant* of the nature of sowing and of harvest, what the pruning of trees and vines is, what time of the year and in what manner these several occupations ought to take place. If any one therefore has his farm to in-spect, some direction to give his steward, or orders to his bailiff, concerning agriculture, must he study and thoroughly under-stand the books of Mago the Carthaginian? Cannot we be satisfied with our own common sense and understanding? (No one can be without eyes, &c.)

3. *Which of us lately was not affected* with the death of that excellent man? For though he died in an advanced age, yet such was the excellence and inimitable beauty of his art, that we thought him worthy of living for ever. (Give the cause, and say, which of us was so void of taste, and of so un-feeling a temper, &c.)

4. Can we who are engaged in the affairs of the state, and in so many toils and dangers, *imagine* that, after a life of unin-

terraptured care and trouble, nothing shall remain of us after death? (Add, be so narrow-minded as to imagine, &c.)

Effect :

1. He was a most cruel tyrant. (So cruel that he spared no)

2. *Nothing now-a-days is sacred*, and therefore the most exemplary punishments should be inflicted upon those, who are so lost to every principle of virtue and religion, as to rob and spoil the holy recesses of temples. (Is so sacred which)

3. Pindar excels other poets in the boldness of his thoughts and the sublimity of his poetry, but his odes are *very difficult to be understood*. (So difficult that whoever wishes to understand them must)

*4. For many have wasted whole estates by inconsiderate prodigality ; but what can be a mark of greater folly, than in a mode of life, which depends upon your own will, to create an inability of continuing it ? Robbery and injustice are often the consequence of these profuse expenses ; for when bountiful largesses are at last followed by want, these men are at length obliged to lay hands on the property of others. Thus when they are desirous of practising this beneficence for the sake of gaining the good will of others, they do not so much attach those men to themselves, who have been the objects of this prodigality, as they excite the resentment of those, who have been the victims of their depredations. Therefore our purse *should neither be too closely shut, nor too open*. (So shut that liberality may not open it, nor so open that it may be at the disposal of all.)

In the enumeration of several things or persons, which all refer to the same verb, it will give great elegance to add a corresponding verb to each particular mentioned, and consequently to give an additional clause to the sentence. It will be proper, if possible, to preserve the *coninnitas* or equality of parts, and that such verbs be chosen that govern the same cases ; as, for

amant te cives et peregrini, say *amant te cives*, *diligunt peregrini*. Thus ; I did this, *not being actuated* by self-interest, but by the desire of serving you : *Non amore mei ductus, sed cupiditate, utilitatis tuæ incensus hoc feci*. In this example, beside the addition of *incensus*, it is easy to observe the exact equality of the parts, the ablative corresponding to the ablative, and the participle to the participle.

EXAMPLÈS.

1. Verres depopulated his province, Sicily, for three years. He is said to have *pillaged cities, houses, and temples*.

2. I am fond of these studies, I own. Let those be ashamed, who have buried themselves in learning, so as to be of no use to society, nor able to produce any thing to public view : but why should I be ashamed, who for so many years have never been *prevented by indolence, by pleasure, nor sleep*, from doing good to others. (Here a different appropriate verb may be used with each particular.)

3. Rocks and deserts re-echo sounds ; savage beasts are often soothed by music, and listen to its charms ; and shall we, with all the advantages of the best education, be unaffected with the voice of poetry ? *The Colophonians, the Chians, the Salaminians, the Smyrnians*, give out that Homer is their countryman. (Here a peculiar verb expressive of the claim of each may be applied to these different people.)

*4. *Great is the force of humanity, of kindred, of blood, and of nature herself*, against suspicions of this kind. It is a most certain prodigy, a monstrous and unnatural thing, that any one should be found clothed in a human shape, who could so far surpass the most savage animals in their ferocity of nature, as basely and inhumanly to cut off the light from those to whom he owes the sweet enjoyment of the precious light of Heaven : when even the most ferocious beasts that have received a kindred birth, and have been bred up together, are taught by nature herself to feel and acknowledge the full force of these common ties. (Verbs may be found to apply to each particular, as, *valeo reclamito*.)

Cicero has a fine example of this, when he says ironically, that all regret the death of Clodius, where each separate expression rises gradually in a climax.

*5. But it is weak in one to presume to compare Drusus, Africanus, Pompey, or myself, with Clodius. Their lives could be dispensed with, but as to the death of Clodius, no one can hear it with any degree of patience. *The Senate mourns, the Equestrian Order is filled with distress, the whole city is in the deepest affliction, the corporate towns are all in mourning, the colonies are overwhelmed with sorrow ; in a word, even the fields themselves lament the loss of so generous, so useful, and so humane a citizen.*

Instead of one expression which was sufficient to convey the necessary idea, two will be joined together, one in a negative, the other in an affirmative form, sometimes by *non, sed—non modò, sed etiam—tantum abest ut, ut* : this is done to give greater force to the subject ; as, for *semper memor ero tuorum beneficiorum* : say *nunquam tua beneficia obliviscar, semper animo meo infixæ erit illorum memoria* ; or to join both by *tantum abest ut, ut* ; as *tantum abest ut beneficia tua oblivisci possim, ut potiùs eorum memoria meo animo infixæ perpetuo mansura sit.*

EXAMPLES,

1. After the atrocious crimes, which this man has been guilty of against the peace of society, after he has thus rendered himself the enemy of all good men, is there a single person who will stand forth his advocate ? *There is now therefore no more room for clemency, the case itself requires severity.*

2. There are few men that do not acknowledge and admire the charms of virtue, though we see every one hurried by passion into vices and pleasures. *No man despises virtue, but all men.....*

*3. I cannot boast a long line of ancestors, whose noble blood may have flowed pure and uncontaminated, through the veins of their remote descendants. I cannot boast of their heroic deeds and glorious exploits, the memory of which might have reflected lustre on my humble name; I must therefore rest the justice of my cause, on your own judgment, and its true merits; but though I do not advance the merits of my ancestors in favor of my cause, *I am not ashamed of them as if they had been different from me, but I boast of, and remember with pleasure, their virtue and probity.*

4. Your soul has never been satisfied with the narrow limits of life, which nature has prescribed us, but nor can this be called your life, which consists in the union of the soul and body; that alone, that I say is your life, which (It will be easy to supply this with the insertion of some affirmative appropriate expressions, the first *about immortality*, the other about *the memory of succeeding ages*, to complete the sentence.)

Instead of one expression, two or more are often joined together to define and explain the same idea; but each should be more forcible, and tend to confirm and illustrate the former: as, Cicero wishing to say that, every man's own fraud and iniquities are his chief tormentors, thus forcibly illustrates the idea: *Sua quemque fraus, et suus terror maximè vexat; suum quemque scelus agitat, amentiaque afficit; suæ malæ cogitationes conscientiaque animi terrent.*

EXAMPLES.

1. Never shall his *measures disconcert*, never his *arts baffle me*; nor will he even attempt to *weaken and undermine me* by his abilities. I know all his *method of attack*, all the *artifice* of his pleading.

2. In this flight, and under the influence of these terrors, he took refuge with Tigranes, King of Armenia, who received him kindly, *roused him from his diffidence*, *cheered him in his distress*, and *restored him to some degree of hope.*

3. You see, my Lords, how he is continually flying up and down the streets and public places with his hair nicely trimmed and loaded with perfumes, followed by a crowd of lackies and attendants ; you see, my lords, I say, how he *despises all others, with what contempt he looks down upon them*, and *how mean and worthless he regards them*, in comparison with himself ; how he looks upon himself as the only great man, the only happy and powerful man.

Though there is no great difference between these several expressions, yet the main idea is thus strengthened and illustrated.

Sometimes an expression is prefixed to another, to denote the mode or manner of it, though it is implied in the sense, and therefore might have been omitted ; such expressions as these : *Non fieri potest, accidit, factum est, fit, faciendum putavi, evenit, contigit, insitum, datum, est, &c.* Most of these imply chance, event, &c. as, for *frater ab omnibus laudatus est*, say, *contigit fratri ut ab omnibus laudaretur*.

EXAMPLES.

*1. In the late irruptions of the Teutones and Cimbri, when all the other provinces of Gaul were over-run, they alone had ventured to stand upon their defence, nor suffered the barbarians to set foot on their territories ; *whence* presuming on so well known an instance of their bravery, they laid claim to great authority, and challenged high military renown.—(*quâ ex re factum est ut.*)

2. These things being very uncertain, *I sent* my Lictors to you.—(*Faciendum putavi ut*)

3. *I thought* I ought to answer your letters as soon as possible.

4. Therefore it will not be easy to find a man who will refuse to impart to others what he knows himself : so that we feel a propensity not merely to learn, but even to teach : and as bulls will *naturally* contend for the calves against lions, with

the greatest violence, and the utmost exertion of their strength, so those, who have the means, as well as the power, feel a natural inclination to do their utmost towards the preservation of the human kind.

Other expressions of the same kind are also often used, as *agere, hoc ago, id egi, &c.* when the verb implies some design : as,

I always consulted the welfare of others, may be rendered by *semper id egi ut aliorum saluti consulerem.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *But if you argue* that any one has murdered his father, and cannot even say why or how he did it, and can only bark without fixing the least suspicion, you shall not indeed have your legs broken ; but if I have any knowledge of these men, they will take such care to have your foreheads branded with that letter,* for which you have so great a detestation, that for its sake you abominate all the rest ; so that for the future, you will think your ill fortune alone deserves your accusations.

*2. But to return to the point, I wish you to look upon me not merely as your friend, but as most sincerely and affectionately attached to you : and indeed it shall be my business to prove, by all the offices in my power, that this opinion of me may be founded in truth. *But if you should appear* to owe me this return, less on my own account than I labored to do on yours, I freely exonerate you from that trouble.

To an expression, on which the force of the subject chiefly rests, another, though not very necessary to it, is often added, containing a kind of self-evident explanation or illustration of the former ; as,

Let young men, above all, avoid idleness :—

* The letter *k*, as the ancients used to write the word *calumnia*.

Here the self-evident illustration, that it is the parent of every flagitiousness, may be added :

Otium præsertim, quod omne flagitiorum genus alit, evitent juvenes.

EXAMPLES.

1. How ignorant of the real interests of the people are those rulers, who, neglecting the blessings of peace, *by which alone nations flourish*, will, upon the slightest causes, plunge their country into all the horrors of war.

2. When we hear or read of a compassionate, a generous, a humane, a just, a moderate, a prudent act, performed while in anger, *that foe to deliberation*, and in the triumph of victory, *when men are generally proud and insolent* ; with such an ardent affection are we inflamed, that we are frequently in love with persons whom we never saw.

To these rules of copiousness of style may be subjoined PLEONASM ; not that rhetorical figure which is used to express a strong emotion of the mind, as *his oculis vidi*, but a grammatical pleonasm, which is sometimes a mere redundancy of words, and sometimes is necessary to connect or give greater force to sentences.

Ita, sic, hoc id, illud, are often redundant, followed by an accusative with the infinitive ; as,

It is my real opinion, that the good are happy, and the wicked miserable :

Ita prorsûs existimo, bonos esse beatos, improbos miseros.

EXAMPLES.

1. But *having persuaded himself* that the letters, which I have written concerning him, with so much accuracy, will have

the greatest weight with you, he insisted upon my writing again to you.

2. Therefore *I wish you to be convinced* that I shall always most fondly cherish the remembrance of your virtues, and that I shall take the same care of all your affairs as if they were my own.

3. But yet *I wish you to think* that you cannot do me a greater favor, than to convince me that it is to your good offices that I shall owe the happy termination of this business; I therefore entreat you to complete it as soon as you possibly can.

Id:

Cæsar having notice of these proceedings, and that it was the design of the Helvetians to attempt a passage through the province, hastened his departure from Rome.

Illud:

There are many things, which I dare not write; *but I am most truly concerned*, that I have not received a single line from you on this subject.

Nisi si is very often used for *nisi*, when it may be explained by *except that*; but never at the beginning of a sentence.

EXAMPLE.

I have at last gained that, for which I have hitherto been waiting, to make you all sensible that a conspiracy is openly formed against the state, *unless there be any one*, who imagines that such as resemble Catiline may yet refuse to enter into his designs. There is now therefore no more room for clemency; the case itself requires severity.

In some cases the repetition of some particles is very elegant:

However this is, take care of your health:

Sed ut ut est, indulge valetudini—chiefly instead of *cunque*.

EXAMPLES.

Ut ut.

1. But *however* these things are, yet I will do what I promised.

2. But *however* other circumstances were, you should certainly consult the welfare of her, who is at your house.

Ubi ubi.

1. Now *wheresoever* the soul is lodged, it is certainly in you.

2. *Wheresoever* he is, yet I will search him out; and bring him with me.

Quantus quantus.

Great as he is, he is all labor, he is all industry.

Quanti quanti.

But *at whatever price* it is bought, that is well bought which is necessary.

Intereà temporis, and *sæpenumerò* are often used for *intereà* and *sæpe*; but *ubi locorum*, *quò locorum*, *minime gentium*, are not merely redundant, but tend to give greater weight to the sentence.

EXAMPLE.

Many times have I been cruelly deceived by the perfidy of my pretended friends, when I reposed the highest confidence on their fidelity; and the insidious designs or open attacks of mine enemies have undermined my happiness, and battered down all my fortunes: *In the mean while* so shattered are all my hopes, so forlorn and miserable is my condition become, that I no longer know *where* I shall betake myself.

Mihi, *tibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, though evidently redundant, are very frequently used by the ancients, but generally in a familiar discourse, and when

the subject has a certain reference to the person which is used as the dative ; as,

Who art thou ?

Quis mihi es ?

EXAMPLES.

Mihi.

And does any one now name lenity and mercy ? We have indeed for a long time lost the true names of things.

Tibi.

1. *But on a sudden*, a few days after, when I had not the least expectation of him, came Caninius to me, who told me that he was immediately going to you.

2. I have been to blame. *Well, what says Sanio ?* He is pacified at last.

Verò is often added to *imò*, though *imò* would have been sufficient of itself.

EXAMPLE.

Why should I mention the calumnies that were afterwards heaped upon him ? And though they were such as would have filled any breast with terror, that had the least consciousness of guilt, yet how he bore them ! Immortal Gods ! bore them did I say ? *Nay*, how he despised and set them at nought !

This pleonasm of a conjunction gives sometimes great elegance to a sentence : as,

But this justice of yours, flourishes every day more and more :

At verò hæc tua justitia florescit in dies magis.

EXAMPLES.

1. And shall I *also* call her mother, if she calls me by the name of daughter ?

2. *But* Darius, being religious, and of a mild disposition, says that he cannot commit so foul an act.

3. *But* why do you hesitate ?

Ille quidem, followed by *sed*, *tamen verò*, is very frequently and elegantly used by Cicero, in such a manner, that the pronoun *ille* is evidently redundant : as,

The book that you sent me, is well written *indeed*, but dear :

Liber quem mihi misisti, est ille quidem optimè scriptus, sed pretio haud exiguo venit.

EXAMPLES.

1. I was necessarily grieved at this ; but how much more when I saw these men attach themselves so closely, so caress, cherish, and even in my presence, embrace my enemy : mine did I say ? Nay, the enemy of all laws, of justice, of his country, and of all order, *not indeed that they* could raise my choler and indignation, which are utterly extinct, but certainly with the hope of doing it.

2. Your military praises shall be celebrated, *not only* amongst us, but in every language, in the annals of every nation, and the latest posterity shall proclaim them ; the fame of these exploits, however, while we read them, seems, I know not how, to be drowned amidst the shouts of armies, and the din of war.

*3. Indeed this peevishness, and those imperfections which I have mentioned, have something like an excuse ; *not justly indeed*, but which may be admitted, from that suspicion which old men are too apt to entertain, of their being generally marked by the younger part of the world as objects of their scorn and derision.

Quod si, quod ubi, quod utinam, as we have seen before, are often put not inelegantly at the

beginning of a sentence, where *quod* though seemingly redundant, must refer to the subject of the preceding sentence.

EXAMPLES.

*1. He had but too much reason to suspect that the continuance of the Roman army could be with no other design, than that of oppressing him. *If he* did not therefore depart and withdraw his troops out of those parts, he would no longer look upon him as a friend, but an enemy. *Should he even* slay him in battle, he was well assured that he would do a pleasure to many of the nobles and great men at Rome. *But if* he would retire and leave him in the undisturbed possession of his country, he would amply reward him.

2. I do not write to you as often as I could, because though misfortune has embittered every moment of my life, yet I feel myself more particularly overwhelmed with an insupportable weight of sorrow, whenever I am obliged to write to you, or when I receive letters from you. *And oh ! that* we had not been actuated by that ardent love of life ; for we should then have escaped, if not all, at least the greatest part of the evils of life. *If indeed* we are reserved by fortune to experience some amelioration of our destiny, our errors cannot be said to have been irretrievable. But if these distresses are fixed and unalterable, no other wish remains but to see you once more, the only comfort and soother of my life, and to breathe my last in your arms.

Fac eas, fac facias, scribas, &c. are often used in a familiar discourse or epistle ; though *fac* seems redundant, it is meant to give greater force to the sense : as,

Believe me your obliged friend.

Sic fac existimes, me tibi devinctum.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Send* a confidential person to him, with whom he may freely confer on the subject which we mentioned.

2. First of all, therefore, *be* resolute and firm.

Non is sum qui, &c. with the verb in the subjunctive, has more force than the simple verb; in this and similar expressions:

Nor do I deny:

Nòn is sum qui negem.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Nor are you ignorant* who you are; nor do you less esteem those persons, your flatterers, who commend you, than suppose them to be envious, who do not admire you.

2. *Nor do I deny* that you have conducted your cause with that masterly eloquence which every one knows you possess.

Quid est quod is used with greater elegance and force than *cur*.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Why* should you accuse others? *Why* should you lay your own fault to the charge of another?

2. Of these two things the wise man makes his choice, either that in rejecting some pleasures he obtains others far more substantial; or in suffering some calamities, he wards off others much more afflictive. This being my firm persuasion, *why* should I dread to bring my friends to the same way of thinking?

But it would be useless to study copiousness, if no regard was paid at the same time to the dignity of style.

DIGNITY or strength of style, which is used to excite the more forcibly the attention of the reader, is that virtue by which, in treating of grave subjects, we use that dignified appropriate language which will best correspond to the

ideas. Though this dignity of style consists in the ideas only; for high sounding words only tend the more to expose mean and trifling thoughts; yet the right arrangement and selection of words will more or less contribute, not only to elucidate the idea, but to give it a greater force and persuasion, since they are the echo of the thoughts that arise in the mind. Thus Cicero, in describing the indignity of taking away a ring from a Roman citizen, says, *civi Romano annulus de digito detractus est*: which is more dignified than if he had said *ademptus*, or *ablatus*, as expressing more forcibly the act of violence, and the addition of *de digito* encreases the dignity of the picture.

Thus one simple idea in itself will not affect the mind of the reader so much as when it is joined with others, and illustrated by several collateral thoughts. The poverty of any one, for instance, has nothing affecting in itself, till I improve the idea by representing that he is a man; that he was not made poor by his own fault; that he is worthy of a better fate, and that he may perhaps perish through hunger.—The death of a father does not excite any emotions, till I describe the forlornness of my present situation, that I have lost my only friend, my best defender; and that my future destiny is uncertain.

To introduce a sentiment, or a short saying, which conveys some general truth, and tends, at the same time, to illustrate the subject, con-

tributes very much to dignity of style. 'Thus, in praising the wisdom of Socrates, and his temperance, we might introduce this short sentiment : *Now temperance is contented with a little.* Cicero often makes use of these instead of an argument.

EXAMPLES.

1. Though I had always that love for you, of which you yourself had formed a just estimate, yet this late action of yours has kindled in me that ardor of affection, which nothing can exceed : *for believe me, there is nothing more engaging, nothing more beautiful, nothing more amiable than virtue.*

*2. Learn from me now, that an opportunity of informing yourself first falls in your way, how many qualifications are required in the man who undertakes a public accusation ! and if you can with justice lay claim to any of them, I shall frankly give up the point in debate ; first, an unblemished innocence and integrity : *for nothing can be more absurd, than for a man to call in question the life of another, who is unable to give an account of his own.*

It contributes also to dignity of style, to introduce a fact or a thought, which is certain and manifest, with *certum est, quis non videt, non intelligit ? Quem fugit ? Quis est qui nesciat ?* and these expressions, *Sole clarius est, nemo negat, quis est qui dubitat ? Constat inter omnes, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

1. *Who knows not* that Hannibal was at last conquered by Scipio ?

2. *Who knows not* that the qualities of the mind are much more noble than those of the body ?

3. *It is certain, &c.* that nothing can be more prejudicial to the mind and body, than indolence.

It sometimes adds very much to the force of

style to represent a thing which is future as present, because it places it as it were before our eyes : as,

And thus a very great tax *will be laid* upon the land :

Sicque agro, pergrande vectigal imponitur.

EXAMPLES.

1. If you continue this way of life, *you will be* miserable.
2. Will ye hesitate, Romans, to employ so favorable an opportunity, presented and put into your hands by the immortal Gods, for the preservation and enlargement of your empire? *Why do we not*, when the Gods so clearly discover their pleasure, entrust likewise this royal war to the care of the man who has already terminated so many others with the highest advantage to the state?

The use of interrogations and exclamations tends also to give greater strength and vehemence to the subject, when the thing of which we speak is very certain, though it might have been rendered by a simple assertion ; as,

Nothing is sweeter than literary ease :

Quid est dulcius otio literato?

EXAMPLES.

1. *What* can be sweeter in the life of man than friendship? *What* shall you find pleasanter than the study of literature? O happy they, in whom a happy disposition from nature is accompanied by the kindness and bounty of nature.

2. *But where is* the man that possesses or indeed can be required to possess greater abilities in war?

3. *Who is* so dull of comprehension as not to see? *Who is* so ignorant as not to perceive?

4. *Oh!* the excellence and beauty of virtue!

5. *Oh!* wretched man, if thou perceivest! more wretched if thou dost not perceive, that this is committed to History; that this stands upon record; that no future age will ever forget this fact.

Where the idea conveys something great, Cicero frequently corrects himself in order to introduce something still greater; as,

Such an infatuation, or to speak more properly, such a madness possessed thee

Tantus igitur te stupor oppressit, vel, ut verius dicam, furor.

EXAMPLES.

1. You have brought to judgment *not a thief*, but a *common despoiler*; not an *adulterer*, but the *violator of chastity*; not a *sacrilegious person*, but the *inveterate enemy of all sacred* and religious rites; not a *ruffian*, but a *most savage butcherer*, of citizens and allies.

2. What Charybdis so voracious! *Charybdis did I say?* If there ever was such a monster, she was only a single one! *The Ocean itself*, by Heavens, seems scarce capable of swallowing up so much wealth, so widely scattered, and situated in so many distant places, in so short a space of time.

It dignifies the subject sometimes to make some concessions, in such a manner that nothing can follow from them against our argument; as,

Let us suppose that it is so, yet

Fingamus, ita esse, non tamen

EXAMPLES.

1. *Let us grant that it is so*, yet it does not follow from this, that virtue does not afford some consolation in misery.

2. *Let them have been avaricious, let them have been passionate and pertinacious*, yet they must be allowed to have been innocent of this crime; of this mad and parricidal deed, and of many other charges brought against them.

It gives also dignity to a subject purposely to pass over some arguments; which is done either by merely referring to them in a general way, or by pretending that we shall pass them

over, as unnecessary, though we lay much stress upon them : as,

Therefore I shall pass over that first act of his life, the most scandalous and the most flagitious :

Itaque primum illum actum istius vitæ turpissimum et flagitiosissimum prætermittam.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Suffer me, in this place, to suppress the mention of your calamity : I designedly pass over many things, leaving it to your own conjectures to inform you how important the war is like to prove.*

2. *I shall not therefore expatiate here on his great actions at home and abroad, by sea and by land, with the unusual success that has attended them ; a success so great, that not only did his countrymen always concur with, his allies perform, and his enemies submit to whatever he desired ; but even the winds and waves seem to have been obsequious to his will.*

3. *Why should I publish his decrees, his rapaciousness, the estates he bestowed, and these, which he violently seized ?*

Words that convey some impressive or lofty idea may sometimes be repeated ; as,

When a law is proposed in behalf of our allies, not to hear *their* complaints !

Cùm lex sociorum causâ rogata sit, sociorum causas non audire !

EXAMPLES.

1. *If tears avail nothing, why dost thou indulge them ? say tears.*

2. *If we profess the name of Christ, ought we not to imitate his life ?*

3. *If the freedom of voting is given to the Roman people, in bestowing the Consulship on whom they please, and even the plebian is not deprived of the hope of arriving at the highest honors, provided he is worthy of those honors, this commonwealth cannot long exist.*

To this may be referred Antimetathesis, or an inverted repetition of the same words.

EXAMPLES.

1. Those who wish to appear *learned* to the *ignorant*, appear *ignorant* to the *learned*.

2. You do not seem to have *conquered*, in order that you *might obtain a triumph*, but to have *obtained a triumph*, because *you conquered*.

3. The *rich* province, which he had entered a *beggar*, he left *poor and desolate*, himself being *loaded with riches and spoils*.

But what will chiefly contribute to give dignity to the style, will be, not merely the use of phrases, but the change of languid into more forcible and dignified words, and sometimes, where the nature of the subject will admit of it, the adoption of a word which has the force of an hyperbole.

Thus, where haste is implied, *volare* may be used for *ire*, and *advolare* for *venire*.

To expose any one to danger, will be more forcibly rendered by *prodere*.

To remove the terrors of the mind: *depellere terrores*, is more forcible than *removere*.

A man full of crimes: *sceleribus coopertus*, is better than *plenus*.

Obvallatus is stronger than *munitus*, &c.

As to the right disposition of words, in order to give greater force to the style, no certain rules can be given, as it must depend on the feelings

and the ideas of the writer ; and sometimes the word, on which the chief strength lies, must precede, and sometimes must be thrown back ; as, the Roman citizen, whom we have mentioned before, does not exclaim, *Sum civis Romanus*, but *Civis Romanus sum*.—*Gratæ mihi tuæ literæ fuere*. If there is an idea to which we wish the attention of the hearer or reader to be immediately directed, that ought to precede : if on the contrary it is necessary to surprize expectation, then the most forcible word will be thrown back to the last part of the sentence ; as indeed it is most agreeable to nature to promise little at the beginning, and to finish with the greater force ; as,

The cruel punishments, which he has inflicted on Roman citizens, drive him headlong to his fate ; some of whom he has unmercifully beheaded, some he has murdered in their prisons, and others, at the very moment that they publicly appealed to their rights of liberty and citizenship, *he ignominiously suspended on the cross*.

CHAPTER VI.

OF THE STRUCTURE OF A PERIOD.

Constat enim ille ambitus et plena comprehensio è quatuor ferè partibus, quæ membra dicimus, ut et aures impleat, et ne brevior sit, quàm satis sit, neque longior.

AS in the course of these exercises several allusions have been made to the structure of a period, in the rules for the arrangement and distribution of the clauses of a sentence, and notice has been taken of that Concinnitas, or Harmony, which is so conducive to elegant composition, it will now be necessary to introduce the scholar to the knowledge of a finished period. Modern languages indeed do not admit of that circuitous circumscription (if we may be allowed the word) which the Greek and Latin writers were at liberty to use, and which constitutes in a great degree the peculiar beauty and elegance of their style. Though, at the same time, it must be admitted, that if every sentence was so studiously labored, that each would form a perfect period, the style would become little different from Metre; for though Aristotle praises it as being ἡδεῖα εὐμαθὴς καὶ εὐμνημονευτός, pleasing and easy to be learned and remembered, yet it should also be mixed and diffused, and as Cicero says, though it should be conformed to the rules of

harmony, yet it will then please most, when art is most disguised and least visible.

I shall therefore give as correct a definition as I can of a period, that by observing the care the ancients bestowed upon it, the scholar may see the necessity of giving as much attention as possible to the rules, which they have left us, in order to acquire a good Latin style. It will be of great consequence to understand the nature of it, in order that he may be enabled to connect and vary the different parts of a period, and may at pleasure bestow upon his style the perspicuity, copiousness, and dignity, of which his subject will admit. For according to Quintilian's idea, you may have a very ingenious plan, and good materials for raising the edifice, yet if the skill of the architect is not displayed in the use and disposition of them, the building will only exhibit a confused and irregular mass.

Cicero says, *Quinam igitur dicendi est modus melior, quàm ut Latinè, ut planè, ut ornatè, ut ad id, quodcunque agetur, aptè congruenterque dicamus.* These rules which he gives for the direction of the orator, may with equal propriety be applied to the Latin writer. The first requisite for elegant composition is good Latinity, or a choice of such words and expressions as were in general use among the best Latin writers. The next thing necessary to be considered, is such an arrangement and position of words as may render the sense intelligible, and produce perspicuity, the true parent of elegance, without which the most studied selection of phrases will only

create a confused chaos of unintelligible words. But in order to effect this, the arrangement must assume the form of a period, with its proper members and proportions: not, however, that the sentence is to be extended or overcharged with unnecessary matter, merely for the sake of completing the exact parts and dimensions of a just period. What is observed by the *aptè* and *congruenter* is such an agreement of the words and ideas to the subject, that a proper connexion and correspondence may be maintained between the parts and the body, so as to form a perfect whole. Since a period is effected by a dissection of a primary sentence or proposition, by means of clauses that tend to explain, to define, to denote the cause, time or place of the subject, it is necessary that they should be inserted *aptè*, that is after that word, to which they properly belong: as we should say, *ego librum, quia pulcher est, non vendam*; and not *ego, quia pulcher est, non vendam librum*: which proves also what we have already observed, that those clauses, beginning by *quia, licet, quùm, quamvis, ubi, qui, &c.* when introduced for the sake of a period, are not to begin the sentence, otherwise they could not be said to form a circuit, or period, but they must come after the nominative or some other word. And when some practice and exercise have been bestowed upon the composition of a period, with the observance of its most prominent and distinguishing rules, it will spontaneously acquire a coherence of the parts, and will as it were, perform its stated revolutions, with perfect regularity, at the same time without that

strict and labored minuteness, which would only render the style stiff and puerile.

Aristotle defines a period thus : λέγω δε περίοδον λέξιν ἔχουσαν ἀρχὴν καὶ τελευτὴν αὐτὴν καθ' αὐτὴν καὶ μέγεθος εὐσυνόπτου. It is a sentence, which runs on circuitously through several parts or members, till it arrives at its perfect conclusion. The beginning and the end, or the nominative and the verb, are divided by the insertion of other clauses, tending to explain and define the subject, but at the same time so connected by the grammatical structure, that the reader sees plainly that he is not yet arrived at the conclusion till he has found those things introduced and expressed, which the first words gave him reason to expect.

EXAMPLE.

The Roman youth, having at length recovered from their consternation, when the light re-appeared calm and serene after so violent a hurricane, yet observing the royal seat empty, though they gave some credit to the assertion of the Patricians, who had stood near it, that he had been caught up, and carried aloft by the storm, *maintained for a time a sorrowful silence*, struck as it were with a dread of their forlorn situation.

The first feature or character of a period then is a circuit, since without these secondary or intervening parts, it would remain a simple primary idea or proposition. For instance : When Sallust says, *Concordiâ parvæ res crescunt ; Discordiâ maximæ dilabuntur*, that is not a period, because each member is separately understood. But if we were to say, *Quemadmodum concordiâ parvæ res crescunt, ita discordiâ etiam maximæ di-*

labuntur, it would then nearly form a period, since the sense would not be discovered before the completion of the sentence. Still however this example, strictly speaking does not give a precise illustration of a period, as there is no intervening member; but it serves merely to show the suspension of the sense till the sentence is complete. In order to constitute a complete period, or circuit, the sentence must as it were be intersected by the insertion of one or more intervening clauses or members; as in this example:

But T. Veturius and Sp. Postumius, in their second consulship, because, after their ill success at Caudium, our legions having passed under the yoke, they had agreed to make peace with the Samnites, were surrendered up to them.

At verò T. Veturius et Sp. Postumius, cùm iterum consules essent, quia, cùm malè pugnatum apud Caudium esset, legionibus nostris sub jugum missis, pacem cum Samnitibus fecerant, dediti sunt his. In this sentence the primary idea is, *T. Veturius et Sp. Postumius dediti sunt his*, which is divided by the clause or circuit expressing the cause, *quia pacem cum Samnitibus fecerant*; and this again is intersected by two other clauses indicating the time, *cùm malè pugnatum apud Caudium esset*, and *legionibus nostris sub jugum missis*.

The least attention will easily discover the beauty of such a period, and how essentially necessary the insertion of these circuitous or intermediate clauses is to elegance of style.

I shall here subjoin a few examples, to show how from a simple, a compound sentence may be formed, consisting of two, three or four members, each member corresponding and contributing to the whole.

Let the simple proposition be,

That Alexander by living temperately, would have acquired the veneration of posterity.

If you wish to extend this sentence by making it to consist of two members, say,

Alexander, if he had lived temperately,

Would have acquired the veneration of posterity.

Three members :

If Alexander, as much as he excelled other commanders in warlike bravery,

Had also surpassed them in the virtue of temperance,

He would have acquired the highest veneration of posterity.

Four members :

If as much as Alexander excelled other commanders in warlike bravery,

He had surpassed them also in the virtue of temperance,

He would not less have commanded the veneration of posterity,

Than he did the love, the admiration, and the absolute subjection of his own people.

Four members :

If unfortunately impudence had the same influence in the senate and at the bar,

As open and daring violence prevails in the fields and solitary places ;

My client would not less be obliged to submit to the effrontery of his adversary in defending his cause,

Than in the commission of that injury he found himself inferior to him in bold and daring courage.

Two members :

I felt the most earnest desire to be at Rome, for many reasons :

Chiefly that when candidate for the Consulate, and during my administration, I might give you proofs of that good will, which I owe you.

Three members :

For myself, at least, the considerations I now lay before you have had so happy an effect on my own mind,

As not only to reconcile me to all the inconveniences of old age,

But to render it even an agreeable state to me.

The distribution of a period into its parts will become very easy to the scholar, where the subject itself supplies him with the particles necessary to form the connexion, as those that denote a cause, condition, relation, opposition and comparison, or that tend to explain or define it ; as, *Quum, quia, si, quodsi, quamvis, ut, qui*, and its compounds, *aut, vel, ubi, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

The simple proposition is,

I have sent you the promised book.

By adding the cause, the period becomes bimembris.

Because you have postponed your coming,—I send you the book I promised.

Comparison :

For as storms and hurricanes recommend and enhance the calm and temperature of the seas and of the skies,

So we may be allowed to suppose, that your former tumults and troubles arose merely to give a greater zest and favor to your present tranquillity.

Condition :

If we had not on our private account many and just motives for the friendship subsisting between us,

I would retrace the first origin of our intimacy from the happy intercourse existing between our parents.

This last might easily be extended to three members :

If we had not on our private account many and just motives for the friendship subsisting between us,

Which a mutual exchange of good offices from our earliest years has so happily confirmed ;

I would retrace the first origin of our intimacy from the friendly intercourse existing between our parents.

Concession :

Though I could not but receive the highest satisfaction from the glory of my dear friend Dolabella,

And it filled me with the most lively joy and pleasure on his account.

Yet I cannot but confess that I feel my heart most sensibly affected,

That in the opinion of the people I am associated with you in the participation of your praises.

Interrogation :

And now, among the different sentiments of the philosophers concerning the consequence of our final dissolution,

May I not venture to declare what are my own?

The relative *qui, quæ, quod*, with its compounds, followed by *is, talis, tantus, &c.*

It is not fit that any credit should be given to those men,

Who appear to speak with too much vehemence for their own emolument.

But it must be most attentively considered by those, *who* have the care of education,

What is the particular bent and disposition of those, whom they instruct.—(Three members may easily be effected here by beginning with the relative *who*.)

Who then can censure, or in justice be angry with me,

If those *hours, which* others employ in business, in pleasures, in celebrating public solemnities, in refreshing the body and unbending the mind ;

If the *time, which* is spent by some in midnight banquetings, in diversions and in gaming,

I myself employ in reviewing and retracing those studies?

Ut, quemadmodum, sicut, &c. followed by *sic*:
quanquam, followed by *tamen, &c.*

Beware, citizens, beware lest, *as* it was glorious for them to transmit so extensive an empire to posterity,

Your inability to preserve and defend it prove not infamous for you.

Though this past behavior of thine was beyond all patience,

Yet have I borne with it as I could.

The structure of a period will be easily understood from these examples ; but as some difficulty will arise, where the simple idea does not immediately supply materials for the formation of the period ; and as nothing contributes more to the true elegance of style, I shall give a few general rules, which, as far as it can be done, will enable the scholar to find out the necessary clauses or members proper to be inserted. In considering a simple proposition, which you wish to extend, and distribute into the parts of a period, it will be easy to discover whether it includes the idea of cause, condition, concession, time, place, &c. and may with propriety admit the insertion of the particles mentioned above, proper to express that idea. Suppose the subject is, the Destruction of Corinth. The first idea that arises is the simple fact that L. Mummius overthrew Corinth. A scholar, therefore, in order to give it the first requisite mentioned by Cicero, the *Latinè*, would say, *L. Mummius Corinthum funditùs delevit.* But if he wished to give it the form of a more finished period, the question might be started, Why he did it : what reasons

could influence the Roman commander to destroy that city, at that time the celebrated seat of arts. This question being resolved, will immediately give the sentence the form and structure of a period.

L. Mummius, *because* he himself was very ignorant of the liberal arts,

Overthrew Corinth with unparalleled barbarity.

And by dwelling a little more on the circumstance of the overthrow, the consideration that this famous city was the seat of the arts, may give another member, and indeed more ornament to the period.

L. Mummius, being himself very ignorant and illiterate,

Destroyed, with the most unparalleled barbarity, the famous city, Corinth,

Which was, as it were, the eye, and the parent of Greece.

Thus an additional clause explanatory of the subject, or denoting concession, &c. may very easily be found out: as,

Industry without genius is of very little use;

It will soon occur to the mind, that industry is very commendable, and that will form a period.

Industry, *though* in itself very commendable,
Is of little use without the help of genius. Or,
industry, *if* it is, or *which* is, without genius, &c.

There are other methods of giving to a simple sentence the form of a period, which are more simple, and which use will soon render familiar and easy; as by changing one word into another

er. Thus an adjective or a participle might be changed into *qui*, &c. A fortunate unhoped-for hour will arrive; say, *which* shall not be hoped for. *Propter*, *ob*, may be changed into *quia*, *cum*, &c. All men respect your brother for his great learning, say, *because* he is endowed with learning. This might indeed be effected by using a periphrasis, or any kind of circumlocution:

In the structure, however, of a period, let it be repeated, that great care must be taken that the *aptè* and *congruenter* mentioned by Cicero, be diligently observed, that the adoption of additional clauses be appropriate and illustrative of the subject, and that they do not extend beyond four members: *Pulcherrima enim est illa Periodus, quæ membris quatuor absolvitur, ut quæ animum suspendat, et aures impleat*; for though many ancient writers have transgressed this rule, that transgression only renders the sentences too fatiguing or obscure. Long sentences of that kind have been denominated *πνευματα*, which might, and *τασταις*, those that could not, be pronounced in one breath.

OF PROSE-MEASURE OR HARMONY.

TO what has been said concerning the structure of the period, it will not be unnecessary to add a few observations concerning the harmony of prose, or that measured equality of numbers and exact proportion of parts, which forms so great a part of a finished period, or rather which seems naturally to arise from its forma-

tion. This μέτρον, or *ratio pedum*, which Quintilian pronounces to be even more difficult in prose than in verse, and to which Cicero attributes an incredible force, is more easily felt than explained, and rests more upon the judgment of the ears, than upon any rules of art. Why, for instance, in the structure of a period, when the sense is completed, does there sometimes seem something wanting? As in, *Neminem vestrum ignorare, arbitror, judices, hunc per hosce dies sermonem vulgi, atque hanc opinionem populi Romani fuisse*. Why *hosce* instead of *hos*? Why did not the sentence end at *sermonem vulgi fuisse*, when the sense admitted it? Merely because the period is better rounded and finished, and pleases the ear better. And indeed Cicero, and many of the ancient writers, bestowed so much attention on the composition of their sentences, that they observed that *Concinnitas*, not merely in the principal members of the period, but even in the other subdivisions of those members, which they call *incisa, commata*, and those artificial stops, which a nice observer will easily distinguish, and which depend upon the respiration: As in the reading of this line, *Animadverti, judices—omnem accusatoris orationem—in duas—divisam esse partes*. Here it is easy to observe that *Concinnitas* in each word that forms the *clausula*. Some of these *clausulæ* might appear very lame, if suffered to end too abruptly, though the sense might permit it; but when they are taken up and supported by other words that follow, the course of the sentence becomes

clear and smooth, as, *Non vult, P. R. obsoletis criminibus accusari Verrem* : It is easy to observe a harshness in this conclusion, but this is corrected by the continuation, *nova postulat, inaudita desiderat*, which completes the sentence.

This harmony of numbers may be defined, a certain measure or part of any thing, as of a sentence, made equal to the other parts, each to each : As in poetical numbers, the feet are equal to each other ; the two short syllables, for instance, of a *dactyl* being equal in time to the long syllable of the spondee, the dactyl and the spondee are equal to each other. This measured equality, or proportion of parts, being connected together, and answering to one another, contributes indeed greatly to perspicuity and smoothness of style. But to be too solicitous on this subject, would be a foolish and superstitious adherence to rules, which might often sacrifice the sense to the wish of pleasing the ear. For it must be observed in the construction of these harmonic numbers, that the sense and the subject must afford materials for it, and then it may be easily effected by variation and copiousness. Nor is it necessary to mention what feet and what measure are most adapted to create harmony, but merely that it is their proper disposition, which produces it, and briefly to state that long syllables have more weight and authority, and render sentences more dignified, but may also tend to make them too heavy : that short syllables have more rapidity, and thus by being properly mixed with the long, make

the sentences run smoothly. But it would be wrong to study too much precision in these things, for though the sentence may have its members, it is not to have a regular quantity: nor is it necessary to observe that minuteness, which some recommend, of noun answering to noun, and even syllable to syllable; but that there should be some equality preserved between each member of the period; with this exception, that if there is a difference, the sentence should rise by a kind of climax, and that the last member should be longer than the preceding. For this reason, Quintilian recommends that more attention should be paid to the ending of the sentence, that it may leave a good impression upon the reader or hearer, as that is the place where he is, as it were, to breathe and refresh himself before he enters upon the next sentence: And therefore Cicero prefers, for the ending, a ditrochee [—υ—υ] as *comprobavit*, or a pæon tertius [υυ—υ] *esse vidēātūr*: this last he also assigns to the beginning of a sentence; and chiefly the dochimus, which consists of the bacchic and iambic [υ——υ—], or of the iambic and cretic [υ——υ—] *Servare quā plūrimōs*; as it would be wrong to say, *Pater, postquā literas ad te missas legerat, et se rescripturum esse promiserat, obiit*. There is here an evident inequality between the last member of the sentence and the two preceding, which may be easily corrected by lengthening the last, *obiit*, and saying, *præter omnium obiit opinionem*.

What has been said concerning numbers may

be further illustrated. When I say, *Nemo potest, sine labore, ad doctrinam accedere*. Here the two nouns, *labore* and *doctrinam*, answer to each other. But if I say *Nemo potest, sine laboris assiduitate ad doctrinam accedere*, the two members will be unequal; and therefore I would add, *nemo potest, sine laboris assiduitate, ad doctrinæ suavitatem accedere*. Here is a complete harmony of numbers.

EXAMPLES.

1. What Caius studied to do through *love*, that Titius tried to prevent through *hatred*. (Render the first member unequal by the addition of another word; *induced by his love*, for instance, and you will see the necessity of having also a participle to answer it in the last member, and to say, *Titius impelled by his hatred*.)

2. For who will grant you that mankind, dispersed at first in the woods and mountains, sheltered themselves within the walls of towns, more by the *advice of the prudent*, than the *oratory of the eloquent*?—Here the opposition will be, in the members of the sentence, between the *advice of the prudent*, and the *oratory of the eloquent*, which answer to each other. But make it each a member of three words, instead of two, and you must add a participle to each, applicable to the idea of each member, and to agree with mankind.

3. For this, my lords, is not a written but an innate law—we have not been taught it by the learned, we have not received it from our ancestors, we have not taken it from books; but it is derived from, it is forced upon us by nature, and stamped in indelible characters upon our very frame. It was not conveyed to us by instruction, but wrought into our constitution; it is the dictate, not of education, but instinct, that if our lives should be at anytime in danger from concealed or more open assaults of robbers or private enemies, every honourable method should be taken for our security. Here the opposition will be seen to be equally supported between written and innate; and the three next members will be equally answered by the three that relate to nature: and the same opposition in the three different members continued to the end.

4. It certainly was the custom of the Pythagoreans, both when they awoke, to rouse their minds by the sound of the lyre, that they might be more ready to act : and when they composed themselves to rest, to lull their minds by the same sound, that they might hush such perturbed ideas as might harass them.

5. But in Herodotus, as in my opinion, every thing flows smoothly, so the dialect itself has such a sweetness, that it seems even to possess concealed numbers.

In short, where a division or an expression in English is shorter than the other, the harmony, as has been said above, may be effected by variation, or copiousness, by adding a word, as a noun or a verb, or by a phrase instead of a word ; As for, What your cruelty has done, I will not do. Here the disproportion is very discernible, but it may be rendered, *my humanity* will not do. The observance of this is not strictly necessary in trifling and common subjects, as epistles, but in graver subjects, which command more attention, as in orations, &c. it is very requisite.

More examples might be produced to illustrate this subject ; but these will suffice. These rules I have given, not to be followed too servilely by the scholar, for that could not fail to render his style forced and full of affectation ; but merely to show the ease, with which he might, with a little care and study, acquire this harmony. I shall only add, that it should not appear to be sought and studied, but to flow spontaneously, from the structure of the periods, and from the sentences themselves, if we thoroughly understand them, and feel their force.

CHAPTER VII.

OF PERSPICUITY AND THE STRUCTURE OF THEMES.

Nobis prima sit virtus perspicuitas, propria verba, rectus ordo, non in longum dilata conclusio, nihil neque desit, neque superfluat. Ita sermo et doctis probabilis, et planus imperitis erit. Hæc est eloquendi observatio.—*Quint.*

QUINTILIAN has here comprised, in very few words, the most essential requisites of perspicuity. Nothing renders the style more perspicuous than the selection of pertinent and appropriate words: and though we have already taken notice of this, yet it will not be unnecessary in this part to repeat that not only must our ideas be clearly arranged, but the words must correspond with the greatest propriety to each idea.

When the scholar is able to determine the true Latinity of words, a selection of which, a diligent reading of the authors of the Augustan age will greatly facilitate; (and it must not be forgotten, that all English idioms, foreign expressions, grecisms, words of doubtful authority, and ambiguous meaning, are to be carefully avoided) his first care will be to attend to the conjunction and suitableness of each; that the verb for instance be appropriate and answerable to the substantive: thus, *a way was taken away from me, or given me*. We should not say, *viæ mihi sunt ereptæ*, but *occlusæ, obseptæ*; nor *datæ*, but *patefac-*

tæ, apertæ, &c. We cannot say, *accipere gradum honoris*, but *ad honoris gradum ascendere* or *pervenire*. We should not say, *naufragium pati*, but *facere*; nor *damnum pati*, but *facere, accipere*; not *pænas accipere*, but *dare, luere, persolvere*.

Thus also many Roman phrases, though derived from their own customs, must be preserved; as we say, *dictatorem dicere*, because the Consul alone created him; we say *legem ferre*, because it was carried to the people for their approbation, and then *legem jubere* or *sciscere*, because the people alone had the power to order it to be ratified.

In the use of adverbs also, care must be taken that they be suitable to the verbs, to which they are joined: as we should say *enixè rogare*, not *obnixè*; *facilè pati*, not *libenter*, for no one receives pleasure in suffering. The same rule may be applied to substantives and adjectives. Adjectives must, in their meaning, strictly correspond to the idea conveyed by the substantive: we should not say *sapiens consilium*, but *bonum* or *fidele*, for wisdom belongs strictly to men and not to the counsel; and, accurately speaking, we should not say *prudens consilium*; but *prudentis viri consilium*; nor can we say *bona aut mala conscientia*; it is only what we are conscious of, that can be good or bad; therefore we ought to say *conscientia rectè vel malè actorum*. Speaking of the stature of a man, we should not say *magnus vir*, but *procerus*; for *magnus* refers to his virtues or actions. And with a little consideration also, it will be easy to discover the

true force and meaning of a word, whether it is taken in a metaphorical or literal sense : as *finis* used for *consilium* ; we should not say *bonus*, *egregius*, but we may say *certus*, *felix* ; we should not say *materna lingua*, but *vernacula*.

Such and so many adjectives must also be joined to the substantives, as will tend to define their proper attributes and qualities, and thus illustrate the whole subject. Speaking of benefits, we shall find that number and greatness, being the attributes of benefits, we may say, *multa et magna beneficia* ; as, we ought to love God, not on account of his benefits merely, but on account of his *many and great* benefits : and here, if we wished to join some adjectives to *God*, we should find that the attributes of God, more particularly applicable to the idea of this sentence, are his liberality and his mercy ; therefore we may say, *Deum liberalissimum et benignissimum*.

Or, instead of an adjective, if we wish to define more clearly any one substantive, and to give greater elegance and perspicuity to the subject, another substantive, denoting the quality, the property, or the cause of the former, is often added, and then the first substantive, or pronoun *ille*, &c. is put in the genitive. Thus, Cicero desiring the historian Luccius to celebrate his actions in his writings, tells him that he wishes to enjoy the benefit of his *testimony*, *benevolence* and *genius*, But because the testimony of Luccius will have great weight among his readers, he says, *auctoritate testimonii* : the testimony of

the historian will be a certain proof of his benevolence, he says, *indicio benevolentiae* ; and because the genius of an eminent and elegant writer conveys great pleasure and satisfaction to the reader, he says, *suavitate ingenii*.

As : 'Though I had always wished most ardently to see your writings, yet they greatly exceeded my fondest expectations ; and I was so charmed and enraptured with them, that I quickly formed a wish to have the memorial of my actions engraved on such lasting monuments. Nor were my views carried merely to the hope of living for ever in the annals of posterity, but also to the desire of having the full enjoyment, during my own life, of *your testimony, your benevolence and your genius*.

The army being drawn up, rather *according to the place*, the declivity of the hill, and *according to the time*, than agreeable to order and the rules of war, the legions were forced to engage separately, some in one place, some in another —(Here, *nature of the place, and necessity of the time*, may be supplied.)

THE peculiar beauty of 'Terence is elegance and perspicuity. In the following passage, for instance, Simo will be found to deliver himself in simple and appropriate language. It is *et doctis probabilis, et planus imperitis*.

*Si sensero hodiè quicquam in his te nuptiis
Fallaciæ conari, quò fiant minùs,
Aut velle in eâ re ostendere quàm sis callidus ;*

*Verberibus cæsum, te in pistrinum, Dave, dedam
usque ad necem;*

*Eâ lege atque omine ut, si te inde exemerim,
ego pro te molam.*

Care must also be taken, that the order of the words be just and clear, that the members of the sentence be not too prolix, that they be not drawn out into superfluous divisions and subdivisions, which would only render the style obscure and confused, and might perhaps answer the purpose of that master in Quintilian, who exhorted his scholars to study obscurity, and who often used to exclaim, *Tanto melius, ipse non intelligo*; but would make the style neither intelligible nor elegant. This Period of Pliny, on the contrary, shows, that by avoiding any unnecessary dilatation of the members, great perspicuity may be given to the sentence :

*Ut enim crudum vulnus medentium manus re-
formidat,*

Deinde patitur, atque ultrò requirit ;

*Sic recens animi dolor consolationes rejicit ac
refugit,*

Mox desiderat, et clementer admotis adquiescit.

As therefore what we write or speak is with a view to be understood, and to attract the attention of our readers or hearers, so perspicuity must be regarded as the primary excellence of language. But perspicuity does not merely relate to words, but also to arguments, and to a nice and accurate arrangement of them ; in such a manner that the sense may be perceived at once, and that nothing be left to conjecture ; an

error which young beginners usually commit, who studying either too much copiousness or an affectation of style, are liable to fall into obscurity: as they are apt to think beauty and dignity of style consist in the selection of fine words and expressions, which are seldom used. But dignity itself, as we have already seen, depends not so much on the words as on the idea; as, what words can be more familiar and simple, and at the same time more sublime and dignified than these: *God said, let there be light, and there was light.*

In naming the principal sources of perspicuity, we may mention causes, or arguments, examples, testimonies and comparisons; and as a Theme, which is given and intended as a model or specimen not merely of perspicuity and elegant style, but of close and accurate reasoning, is generally distributed into these several parts or divisions, it may not be improper to lay down a few rules, which may render its composition more easy to the scholar: and indeed it must have often been observed that boys may have acquired a great readiness in writing good Latin, and may possess a kind of mechanical facility in versification, who will at the same time entertain an almost invincible dread of Themes, and who will not be able to venture alone on this unpleasant task without the constant aid and particular direction of the teacher.

It would seem almost unnecessary to observe, that when the Thesis, or subject, is given, the scholar must not sit down and commit to paper

the first thought that arises in his mind. He must not begin to write before he is fully acquainted with the whole scope, and the different bearings of his subject: before he has fully weighed, maturely considered, and carefully compared with each other, the arguments upon which the truth of his Thesis is to be established. But above all, he must attend to the connexion as well of the arguments as of each particular sentence. Not only before he sits down to writing ought he to consider this connexion well, as far as it regards the whole subject, but also when he has committed to paper one or two arguments, and adjusted together one part of his materials, he must read over and examine each sentence, to see whether the dependency and relation of the parts is regular, and properly maintained: and even after the whole is finished, it should be well reconsidered, since what appeared suitable and apparent at first, may not upon a second review, appear equally so.

OF THE STRUCTURE OF THEMES.

THEMES are nearly the same as what are called *Orationes Umbraticæ*, or *Διδασκαλικοί*. Their business is to prove and to please. When the Thesis, or subject, is given, the first consideration will be to find out from what field of knowledge, and from what sources, the whole apparatus of proofs and arguments, is to be sought. Speaking, for instance, of liberty, the Histories of Greece and Rome would find an ample field

of knowledge, from which arguments might be drawn.

Some writers have given us a number of circumstances as a kind of clue to direct us. They say, and not inaptly, that the whole invention may be derived from all, or most of these several points or circumstances: *Who and What? Where? By what means and helps? Why? How? When?*

Suppose the subject given is, '*Death ought not to be feared!*' It will at first sight appear that the whole apparatus of arguments is to be derived from the history and experience of mankind. The circumstance, *Who?* and *What?* will suggest the idea, that *all men are subject to it*; and here the question might be started,—*Why are all men subject to it?* The answer is, *On account of the structure of the human body.* But in the arrangement of these arguments, there should be so intimate a connexion between them and the Thesis, that the illustration of each may visibly establish the truth of the subject, which is proved by the conclusion. *Death is not to be feared. Why?* Because all men are subject to it: which is confirmed by two reasons, *daily experience and the structure of the body.* Hence I conclude, *if all men are subject to it, I ought not to fear it.* How does that follow?—*Why should a wise man fear that which cannot be avoided?* Another and a posterior cause may be given. *It is the way to eternal happiness.* Is this true? Yes. The Scriptures teach it.—Then I conclude *if death is the way to eter-*

nal happiness, why should I fear that, which leads me to a better place, than that in which I live?

Thus in writing upon any given subject, it will be very easy to carry in our memory this short clue of circumstances, and it will soon occur to us, what must answer to all or any one of them. When, therefore, the scholar has furnished himself with a sufficient apparatus of materials and arguments, the next business will be to arrange them in their proper order, and to distribute them into distinct parts or divisions.

The first part of which the Theme is composed, is the Proposition, or the Premises, from which the subject sets out, in which a general view of the question is given, by amplifying or explaining it more at large, or by the assertion of some other principle closely connected with, or easily referable to the main subject. The next is the *RATIO PROBANS*, or what is called by some the *Ætiologia*, in which we prove the truth of the Theme, by some reason or argument. Thus the whole must assume the form of a just and close reasoning.

In aid of this, will be introduced as another division, the *CONFIRMATIO*, which is generally a common place or moral thought, which demonstrates the subject, or by inverting it, or showing the unreasonableness of a contrary opinion, tends more fully to prove the truth of the Thesis. Suppose the Thesis is, *Horatius Cocles is to be praised*: the Reason or *Ætiologia*, because he is a great man; the Common Place, or Confirmation, every brave man is to be praised.

To this must be added illustrations of the subject drawn from SIMILES, COMPARISONS, EXAMPLES and TESTIMONIES.

For instance : the Thesis or Proposition is, *It is for the advantage of the Commonwealth that there be many accusers, provided they do not calumniate.*

The reason to prove this, or Ætiologia, which will include a common place, or confirmation, may be thus :

Any one may be innocent, and yet not free from suspicion : and though it be a misfortune, yet the accuser may be forgiven, because the innocent, if accused, may be acquitted, but the guilty cannot be condemned without being accused. It is better that the innocent should be sometimes accused, than that the guilty should not be brought to judgment.

This will be illustrated by a SIMILE :

Dogs are kept in the capitol, to announce by their barking, the approach of thieves ; and though they may bark in the day-time, and at the innocent, yet the error is on the right side. Thus it is with public accusers, who, though they may be allowed to bark at innocence unknowingly, yet should cast all their wholesome venom against the guilty.

This comparison is one of the chief sources of perspicuity, since we can neither define nor judge with sufficient accuracy of the magnitude, beauty or quality of any thing, without comparing it with something else, which is at least equally known and common. Thus, when I

say, *I love you sincerely*, I do not speak with so much perspicuity, as when I compare my love for you, with the love of others, who are noted for it : as, *I love you, as a father loves his children.*

Comparison may be either longer and more diffuse ; as when we previously explain and confirm, by illustrative arguments, the object to which we compare any thing : as

Great is the love of parents to their children, so that nothing can equal it : there is nothing, indeed, which they will refuse to their advantage, comforts and happiness ; nay, parents will often prefer the conveniences of their children to their own. But, however great and transcendant that love may be, yet I greatly doubt, whether the tender affection I feel for you is at all inferior to it.

Or, Comparison may be shorter ; as

I love you as I love my father.

Or, metaphorically speaking :

You are a father to me.—In you I honor a father.

A Simile should also be apt and appropriate, and should convey no low and offensive ideas to the mind. It would be an displeasing idea to compare the instruction of a master, with the dung which softens and fertilizes the ground, though it might be a just comparison.

But the comparison of a greater with a lesser object, is chiefly to be imitated, as conducive to perspicuity. Our first business is to show the apparently superior greatness of the object, to which we compare any thing, and then show the real superiority of the thing itself : as,

Learning is certainly glorious and desirable, as it enlightens the mind ; but how much more glorious is *virtue*, which ennobles and purifies the soul !

Was there any one of us so void of taste, and of so unfeeling a temper, as not to be affected lately with the death of that excellent person ? For though he died in an advanced age, yet such was the excellence and inimitable beauty of his art, that we thought him worthy of living for ever. Was he then so great a favorite with us all, *on account of the graceful motions of his body ;* and shall we be insensible to the *surprising energy of the mind, and the sprightly sallies of genius ?*

Your forefathers often engaged in war, *to revenge the insults offered to their merchants and seamen.* How then ought you *to be fired*, when you call to mind, that in consequence of a single express, *so many thousand Roman citizens were butchered in one day ?*

If many of the greatest men have been careful to leave their *statues and pictures, these representations not of their minds but of their bodies,* ought not we to be much more desirous of leaving the portraits of our *enterprizes and virtues,* drawn and finished by the most eminent artists ?

One thing may be also compared with its opposite, or illustrated by contrasting it ; as the beauty of any virtue will appear the brighter by being contrasted with the deformity of the opposite vice ; as,

Nothing is more base or unworthy of a man

than *avarice* ; but let us consider *liberality*, and see how noble it is, and how much it is the mark of a generous disposition.

Cicero thus compares his own study of the sciences with the pursuit of other men after pleasures :

Who then can censure me, or in justice be angry with me, if these hours, which others employ in business, in pleasures, in celebrating public solemnities, in refreshing the body, and unbending the mind ; if the time, which is spent by some in midnight banqueting, in diversions, and in gaming, I employ in reviewing these studies ?

To this must be added *Examples* ; by which we bring instances from history to corroborate the truth of the Thesis.

EXAMPLES so far, have greater authority than arguments, that they remove every doubt of the possibility or feasibility of any thing, convince us that what has been done by others may be achieved by ourselves, and place the truth of whatever is to be proved immediately before our eyes. An example must, in every feature and particular, be suited to the subject of which we treat. Thus if we speak of the contempt of death, we may introduce Socrates, who did really contemn death, and not Cicero, who, though he had beautifully discoursed upon it, yet trembled at its approach. If we speak of the contempt of riches, we should instance the same Socrates. or Fabricius, or Curius, who despised riches when they were within their reach, and

not those, who being poor, pretend to despise what they cannot obtain, nor the rich, whose contempt of what they enjoy, must be very suspicious. In our praise of any virtue, we must not adduce a man who, though possessed of that virtue, is disgraced by some notorious infamy ; lest, by that means, the authority of the example should be weakened. In praising valor, the palm should not be given to Catiline. Examples should also be true, and not fictitious ; because the ignorant alone can be deceived by fables. They may also be illustrated by some argument, to show the motive and design with which the action was done. As in adducing Socrates, to exemplify a contempt of riches, various causes may be added, to corroborate the Thesis itself ; as, *He knew that true riches consisted in wisdom and virtue, not in things external and perishable. Or, He had learned that every man who can be satisfied is sufficiently rich.*

Cicero, speaking of the happy union of learning with an excellent and virtuous disposition, thus introduces his examples.

“ Such was that divine man, Africanus, whom our fathers saw ; such were C. Lælius, and L. Furius, persons of the greatest temperance and moderation ; such was old Cato, a man of great bravery, and, for the times, of great learning, who surely would never have applied to the study of literature, had they thought it of no service towards the acquisition and improvement of virtue.”

And again, Cicero having laid it down as it

were a *Thesis*, *that learning and studies must be admired even by those that do not possess them*, says,

“Though we ourselves were incapable of them, and had no relish for their charms, still we should admire them, when we see them in others.”

And then he thus illustrates the subject by this example, in which, celebrating the powers of an inferior art, he takes occasion from thence to bestow the more merited praise upon the superior excellence of learning.

“Was there any of us so void of taste, and of so unfeeling a temper, as not to be affected lately with the death of Roscius? For though he died in an advanced age, yet such was the excellence and inimitable beauty of his art, that we thought him worthy of living for ever. Was he then so great a favorite with us all on account of the graceful motions of his body, and shall we be insensible to the surprising energy of the mind, and the sprightly sallies of genius?”

It will also be necessary to introduce QUOTATIONS into the Theme, which will serve to strengthen what we say by the opinion and *Testimony* of poets, or other good authors. These may be either formally introduced, by mentioning the name of the author, and showing the propriety of the application; as Cicero often inserts whole verses from Ennius, by way of testimony; as where he says, that ignorant and foolish old men often lay their own faults and infir-

mitiēs to the charge of old age, he then reasons upon the contrary practice of Ennius, in these words :

Quod non faciebat is, cujus modò mentionem feci, Ennius,

*Sicut fortis equus, spatio qui sæpè supremo
Vicit Olympia, nunc senio confectu' quiescit.*

*Equi fortis et victoris senectuti comparat suam,
&c.*

Or, quotations may be assimilated in a familiar manner to the subject, and incorporated into it ; as in this passage of Seneca :

*In frigora septentrionemque vergentibus imman-
sueta ingenia sunt, ut ait poeta,*

—suoque simillima cælo.

Or, sometimes quotations are introduced by authors, in different words from the original, and clothed as it were in a new dress ; as where Cicero has expressed these words of Euripides :

*To δε γῆρας αχθος αἰεὶ
Βαρύτερον Αἰτνας σκοπέλων
'Ἐπὶ κρατὶ κεῖται,*

in his own language, and as a part of his own argument :

*Senectus plerisque senibus tam odiosa est, ut
onus se Ætnâ gravius dicant sustinere.*

What has been said concerning Quotations or Testimonies, may also be applied to Similes and Examples, which it is by no means necessary always to introduce distinctly and in separate heads, but that they may be inserted into the very body of the argument, so that when materials crowd upon the mind, the ardor of the wri-

ter is not supposed to allow him to do more than merely to advert to them in a short and cursory manner.

The CONCLUSION, where it is regularly introduced, and where the sense of it is not expressed in the body of the Theme, is a short recapitulation, tending to prove the truth of the Thesis, and including some pertinent observation upon the subject.

Though some of the following specimens are taken from Cicero's Orations, and other Latin writers, and are chiefly applicable to longer dissertations, yet they will easily admit of being formed and adapted to the use of Themes, and may with great propriety be received as elegant models for introducing testimonies, examples, quotations, &c.

FORMS OF CONFIRMATION.

Quam ego rem argumentis, non multis sed probis validisque, sum probaturus.

Verbis tam disertis, rationibus tam claris confirmata, ut non atramento, sed solis radio exarata videantur.

Liceat autem hoc propositum, veluti arcem munitissimam fortissimis instruere propugnatoribus.

Quinetiam res ista voce naturæ promulgata, jure gentium sancitur, usu denique et consuetudine firmatur.

Hic mihi liceat in aciem et justum prælium educere validissimarum rationum hastatos, re-

rum certissimarum principes, locupletissimæ fidei Triarios.

FORMS OF CITING EXAMPLES.

Plurima sunt et obvia exempla.

Exempla si quærantur illustrium virorum.

Exemplorum pleni libri, plenæ memoriæ.

Exemplorum nullum illustrius, quàm illud Thaletis.

Inter multa præclara facinora alia, nihil clarior quàm quod

Atque ne hæc obscura et nuda videantur sine exemplorum appositione, videte quæso

Quam quidem rem probè intellexisse, et rectâ reputâsse viâ mihi videntur, qui

Pristinam veritatis faciem historia prisca reteggit: huc provoco.

Non referam tibi Socratem, Chrysippum, &c. et ceteros, magnos quidem viros

Nonne profectò hoc illustravit ille omnium princeps

Pythagoras mihi primus è memoriâ in linguam venit, Italiæ splendor clarissimus.

Prodeat Pericles ille, cujus fulgura, tonitrua, fulmina in concione visa et audita metuerunt Athenæ.

Quod ad mores indolemque, quid justius? Quid sanctius, in omni antiquitate? Virtus ipsa domicilium Lacedæmone habuit; et consensu quodam in laudes masculi populi conspirâsse scriptores ferè omnes videntur.

FORMS OF CITING TESTIMONIES.

Hæc ita clara, ita explorata sunt, ut frustra quis testium nubem in fidem vocaverit.

Cujus verba in præsidium advoco.

Testis mearum sententiarum

Ad veteres provoco, et antiquitatis magnum illud, et venerabile tribunal.

Nec dissentiunt à me prudentes

Quod poeta his versibus depinxit.

Aureum, facetum, et verum Bionis illud

Dignissima est aureis inscribi literis, menti commendanda penitus, et sæpè memoriâ retractanda illa M. C. sententia.

Ad rem et appositè Tullius.

Nec vates ille vanus qui cecinit.

Præclara illa vox, et præclaro viro dignissima.

Non injuriâ exclamat ille

Judicio meo suffragatur philosophus; hujus rei locupletissimus testis est

Atqui huic opinioni adstipulatur Seneca.

Non temerè igitur dictum, si Hesiodo credimus.

Quare benè scitèque præcipit, canit

Herodotus, lac musarum.

Thucydides, oculus verecundiæ.

Homerus, poetarum antiquissimus: Phœbus ille Poetarum. Ἀριστος καὶ θειοτατος τῶν ποιητῶν.

Virgilius, Latinus Homerus, Mantuanus ille vates, Poetarum princeps

Cicero: longè omnium qui scripserunt, aut locuti sunt, copiâ dicendi et gravitate princeps.—Disertissimus omnium Romuli nepotum—.Flos illibatus populi, suadæque medulla. Quasi Deus Oratorum: ποταμὸς χρυσοῖο ἔειντος.

Demosthenes: frequens et magnus auditor Platonis.

Qui unus inter omnes emicuit omni dicendi genere.

Horatius: Numerosus ille Horatius: Latinus Pindarus, Lyricorum princeps, Venusinus ille vates :

Romanæ fidicen lyræ.

FORMS OF CONCLUDING.

Sed et unde orsa est, in eodem terminetur oratio mea.

Jam verò, ne in vestram humanitatem injuri-
osâ longitudine peccet oratio mea

Non est autem cur pergam : orationis igitur
vela contraho

De quâ re non plura dicam, ne vestræ benignitatis aures, diutiùs obtundam ingratus.

Sed ut aliquandò extremum habeat oratio mea,
finem jam faciam.

Reliqua quæ, &c. si persequerer, non deesset
oratio, deessent latera, quibus exclamarem, &c.

Habetis sermonem benè longum hominis uti-
nam non impudentis, illud quidem certè, non
nimis verecundi, qui quidem, de &c. tam multa
dixerim.

SPECIMEN OF A LATIN THEME.

Ad pœnitendum properat citò qui judicat.—Syr.

Prop. BENE cautus rerum judex tempus et diligentiam ad eas priùs trutinandas adhibebit, quam quicquam pro certo statuatur.

Rat. Adeò enim densa erroris nebula mortales visus obducta hebetat, ut res sæpenumerò non eæ videantur, quæ sunt.

Conf. Quid autem obscurius, quid magis ignotum, quàm verum est? Finxerunt veteres in imo puteo demersam latere veritatem; hoc scilicet commento intellectum voluerunt, eam non nisi longâ argumentorum serie hauriri, inque lucem proferri posse. Quare vitanda est festinatio, quæ tum omnibus in rebus, tum maximè in vero indagando nocet.

Simi. Facilis currentibus lapsus; per obscura et ignota eunti, timidè, cautè et pedetentim progrediendum est.

Argum. Tempus rerum abdita promens in apertum, temerè raptimque judicata reprehendit, arguit, corrigit; dumque eunt dies, aliam mentem, aliud judicium firmioribus fultum argumentis secum adferunt. Quî fit tandem, ut priora illa eversa ruerint, nisi quod non satis altè jacto fundamento nitebantur?

Test. “Da spatium tenuemque moram ; mala
cuncta ministrat

Impetus.”

Exam. Quis enim nescit cunctando rem olim
Romanam, duce Fabio, restitutam fuisse ?

Conc. Ut igitur quisque ad sententiam de rebus
minùs perspectis ferendam maximè festinat ;
ità maximè verendum est, ne judicem temera-
rium latæ pœniteat.

These are the several parts into which a Theme is usually divided ; but it must be observed that it is not necessary to adhere too rigidly to them. For though this method tends to give a precision of thinking to the scholar, yet it is not meant to preclude some partial deviation from this system ; in such a manner, however, that he may not be allowed to wander from the subject, but that in proving and illustrating his Thesis, he may sometimes follow that arrangement which will best suit his fancy or his capacity. In the following specimen, for instance, it will be seen that Examples form the most prominent features of the Theme, and that the proofs and illustrations are chiefly derived from them.

*Integer vitæ, scelerisque purus,
Non eget Mauri jaculis.—Hor.*

QUUM a Philosopho quodam quæreretur, utrùm ad rempublicam tutandam, plus adjumenti afferret justitia, an arma; si, inquit, ex justitiæ præceptis viveretur, nullum armis opus foret. Præclarum sanè responsum! E scelere enim et injuriâ bella solent proficisci. Quæ autem bella integro vitæ scelerisque puro sunt gerenda? Quæ pugna committenda? Qui enses acuendi? Illi cum omnibus pax intercedit. Summæ enim esset perversitatis et malitiæ innocuo nocere.

Æneæ, Trojâ captâ, victores Danai pepercerunt, quòd pacis, Helenæque reddendæ auctor fuerat: ei igitur Patrem et Penates per medios hostes, per cædes, et incendia portanti, tutum fuit iter. Usque adeò pietas vel inter hostes tuta et honorata est.

Quis nescit Numam illum pium et tranquillum regem? Hoc regnante, ne unum quidem diem Templum Jani apertum est; sed quadraginta annos clausum stetit, dum pax florebat undique perpetua. Justitia et lenitas sui Regis non Romanam gentem solùm cultam et mansuetam reddidit; sed etiam ad proximas civitates, ab ejus exemplo, ut à sacro quodam fonte, amor virtutis et justitiæ fluxit. Neque odio, neque invidiæ erat obnoxius; regni affectatio neque privatas neque publicas in regnum insidias struxit. Sive Deorum metus, qui plerumque pios tuentur, sive illius virtutis reverentia de improbis hominum cordibus triumphârit; certum est, vel hy-

To free any one from dangers, to avert them : *deprecari alicujus pericula*.

p. 22. To be cast in a suit : *causâ cadere*.

p. 25. Presence of mind : *præsentis animi consilium*.

p. 26. To entertain too sanguine a hope of success : *spem temerariam habere*.

To abdicate the sovereign power or magistracy : *imperium deponere ; se magistratu abdicare*.

p. 30. The thing in question : *de quo agitur*.

To serve for the twentieth time : *vicesima stipendia mereri*.

To whose decision they appealed : *quem judicem fecerint*.

To assert one's right to a territory : *agrum vindicare*.

He rested the point of controversy : *controversiam referebat*.

p. 31. To make a toil of pleasure : *amara jucundis intermiscere*.

p. 32. When there is such a noise : *ubi tot obstrepunt graculi*.

p. 33. It became the first object of my wishes to acquire your love : *nihil optatius fuit, quàm ut abs te amarer*.

p. 34. To assault by covert ways : *cuniculis oppugnare*.

p. 35. From motives of state policy : *reipublicæ causâ*.

No one invested with supreme power and authority : *nemo cum viribus plurimum posset*.

To condescend to listen to justice, without a violent effort on one's part : *ad jus sine vi descendere*.

p. 36. Which must from their antiquity have obtained the force of nature : *quæ jam naturæ vim obtineret per vetustatem*.

He had erected monuments to his fame : *monumenta sibi extruxerat*.

p. 38. Toils and intrigues of ambition : *ambitionis labor*.

Having contracted a lameness from a wound : *graviter claudicanti ex vulnere*.

p. 39. To bind any one by the strongest ties of gratitude : *gratissimum alicui facere*.

p. 41. I am bound to him by the strongest obligations : *hic de me optimè meritus est*.

He obtained the first celebrity and pre-eminence in the forum : *clarus in togâ, et princeps*.

To have influence with any one : *apud aliquem valere*.

p. 42. To pay attention to a thing : *in aliquid incumbere, vel alicui rei*.

Entitled to the highest commendation : *summâ laude dignus.*

p. 44. I received information of : *renuntiatus est mihi de.*

Not in endeavouring to blot out the memory of the ancient quarrel, but in concerting measures to renew the war : *non ad oblivionem veteris belli, sed ad comparationem novi.*

p. 45. Not unaccompanied with : *plenam.*

When no longer attended with danger : *secura.*

To be struck dumb with astonishment : *obstupescere.*

p. 48. To inform any one of what has been done : *acta edocere.*

p. 50. With some degree of accuracy : *accuratiùs.*

I must live and die with the conviction of : *mihi vivendum atque moriendum conscio.*

p. 51. To amuse himself with projecting the conquest of the world : *orbem terrarum vincere meditaretur.*

Common and possible events : *communis esse, et fieri posse.*

p. 52. To act from the best of motives, &c. : *optimo animo et judicio agere.*

p. 53. To let slip an opportunity : *oblatam occasionem dimittere, prætermittere.*

The mind is filled with disappointment and bitter anguish : *spe destitutus graviter doleo.*

p. 55. To be noted for the wisest person : *inter sapientissimos haberi.*

p. 56. To meet with a sudden reverse of fortune : *subitâ rerum conversione pænè opprimi.*

p. 57. To have an ascendancy over any one : *apud aliquem auctoritatem habere, valere.*

He knows and has found for certain : *cognitum compertumque sibi.*

To be disaffected to : *alieno animo esse in.*

p. 60. Intoxicated with fury : *furens audacia.*

The smoke had intercepted their view : *conspectum fumus abstulerat.*

p. 61. To weigh the force and motive of every duty : *officiorum omnium momenta perpendere.*

To give rules for the attainment of the liberal arts : *vias optimarum artium tradere.*

p. 62. To associate the sons into a share of the kingdom : *regni consortium jungere cum.*

As his own free gift : *sui muneris.*

To free any one from dangers, to avert them : *deprecari alicujus pericula*.

p. 22. To be cast in a suit : *causâ cadere*.

p. 25. Presence of mind : *præsentis animi consilium*.

p. 26. To entertain too sanguine a hope of success : *spem temerariam habere*.

To abdicate the sovereign power or magistracy : *imperium deponere ; se magistratu abdicare*.

p. 30. The thing in question : *de quo agitur*.

To serve for the twentieth time : *vicesima stipendia mereri*.

To whose decision they appealed : *quem judicem fecerint*.

To assert one's right to a territory : *agrum vindicare*.

He rested the point of controversy : *controversiam referebat*.

p. 31. To make a toil of pleasure : *amara jucundis intermiscere*.

p. 32. When there is such a noise : *ubi tot obstrepunt gradibus*.

p. 33. It became the first object of my wishes to acquire your love : *nihil optatius fuit, quàm ut abs te amarer*.

p. 34. To assault by covert ways : *cuniculis oppugnare*.

p. 35. From motives of state policy : *reipublicæ causâ*.

No one invested with supreme power and authority : *nemo cum viribus plurimum posset*.

To condescend to listen to justice, without a violent effort on one's part : *ad jus sine vi descendere*.

p. 36. Which must from their antiquity have obtained the force of nature : *quæ jam naturæ vim obtineret per vetustatem*.

He had erected monuments to his fame : *monumenta sibi extruxerat*.

p. 38. Toils and intrigues of ambition : *ambitionis labor*.

Having contracted a lameness from a wound : *graviter claudicanti ex vulnere*.

p. 39. To bind any one by the strongest ties of gratitude : *gratissimum alicui facere*.

p. 41. I am bound to him by the strongest obligations : *hic de me optimè meritus est*.

He obtained the first celebrity and pre-eminence in the forum : *clarus in togâ, et princeps*.

To have influence with any one : *apud aliquem valere*.

p. 42. To pay attention to a thing : *in aliquid incumbere, vel alicui rei*.

Entitled to the highest commendation : *summâ laude dignus.*

p. 44. I received information of : *renuntiatum est mihi de.*

Not in endeavouring to blot out the memory of the ancient quarrel, but in concerting measures to renew the war : *non ad oblivionem veteris belli, sed ad comparationem novi.*

p. 45. Not unaccompanied with : *plenam.*

When no longer attended with danger : *secura.*

To be struck dumb with astonishment : *obstupescere.*

p. 48. To inform any one of what has been done : *acta edocere.*

p. 50. With some degree of accuracy : *accuratius.*

I must live and die with the conviction of : *mihi vivendum atque moriendum conscio.*

p. 51. To amuse himself with projecting the conquest of the world : *orbem terrarum vincere meditaretur.*

Common and possible events : *communia esse, et fieri posse.*

p. 52. To act from the best of motives, &c. : *optimo animo et judicio agere.*

p. 53. To let slip an opportunity : *oblatam occasionem dimittere, prætermittere.*

The mind is filled with disappointment and bitter anguish : *spe destitutus graviter doleo.*

p. 55. To be noted for the wisest person : *inter sapientissimos haberi.*

p. 56. To meet with a sudden reverse of fortune : *subitâ rerum conversione pænè opprimi.*

p. 57. To have an ascendancy over any one : *apud al'quem auctoritatem habere, valere.*

He knows and has found for certain : *cognitum compertumque sibi.*

To be disaffected to : *alieno animo esse in.*

p. 60. Intoxicated with fury : *furens audacia.*

The smoke had intercepted their view : *conspectum fumus abstulerat.*

p. 61. To weigh the force and motive of every duty : *officiorum omnium momenta perpendere.*

To give rules for the attainment of the liberal arts : *vias optimarum artium tradere.*

p. 62. To associate the sons into a share of the kingdom : *regni consortium jungere cum.*

As his own free gift : *sui muneris.*

To fall prostrate at the feet of any one: *genibus advolvi*.

To have an absolute power over any one: *omnia in aliquem posse*.

p. 63. The gods pour down their vengeance on so many perjuries: *Diis tot perjuria vindicantibus*.

To be reduced to extreme necessity: *ad incitas redigi; res ad extremum perductæ*.

p. 64. The skirts of places facilitate the knowledge of: *oræ locorum faciliorem cognitionem dant*.

To adhere to the rule proposed: *manere in instituto suo*.

The most splendid merit is recompensed by the small and reluctant voice of praise: *rectè facto exigua laus et ab invitis expressa proponitur*.

p. 65. To fall into neglect: *obsolescere*.

To promote with the greatest zeal and ardor: *studiosius adaugere*.

p. 66. To stand in the way of the designs of others: *aliorum consiliis officere*.

p. 67. To sink into languor and inactivity: *in mollitiem et inertiam solvi*.

p. 68. It affords a heartfelt satisfaction to behold: *incredibiliter delectat videre*.

p. 69. The mind becomes enervated by luxurious ease: *luxuriatur otio animus*.

A most efficacious method: *res efficacissima*.

Every man distinguished for his bravery: *fortissimus quisque vir*.

Avaricious views divert into the pursuit of plunder: *avaritia ad prædā devocat*.

p. 70. Every improvement of human genius: *omnem ingenii cultum*.

p. 71. Intelligence was brought: *nunciatum est*.

Driven to despair by the stings of an evil conscience: *conscientiâ scelerum exagitatus*.

To kill oneself: *necem sibi consciscere*.

Without accomplishing a purpose: *re infectâ*.

p. 72. Report by its rapidity anticipates: *fama suâ celeritate superat....*

Their whole thoughts are bent on worldly and perishable objects: *nihil nisi mortale terrenumque cogitant*.

p. 73. For presuming to inquire, or at all concern themselves: *quòd sibi quærendum aut cogitandum putarent*.

They assumed the mask of hypocrisy, put on a hurried step, and displayed reserve and composure in their countenances: *falsi ac festinantes, vultuque composito*

p. 75. Perfumes of a very high and sweet savor: *unguenta summâ et acerrimâ suavitate condita.*

p. 76. To take the foraging party in the rear: *frumentarios à tergo aggredi.*

To prove by the most convincing reasons: *gravissimis rationibus evincere.*

To feel the breast glow with the warmest zeal: *incredibili studio rapi.*

p. 77. To pay all possible respect to: *maximum honorem præstare; maximâ observantiâ habere.*

p. 79. We can be supplied with sufficient materials: *nobis suppetere potest.*

The mind could not bear being stretched to such a degree: *animus non posset ferre tantam contentionem.*

p. 80. In the hour of despair: *spe abiectâ.*

p. 81. To leave off childish play: *relinquere nuces pueris.*

p. 85. To make an impression on the senate: *senatum commovere.*

p. 86. To take a magnificent view of one's self: *se magnificè circumspicere.*

To store the memory with an immense mass of... *immensam... copiam memoriâ comprehendere.*

p. 88. It has subjected them to incurable diseases and insufferable pains: *iis morbos insanabiles, et dolores intolerabiles adjunxit.*

Minds ready to sympathise with the pains of the bodies: *animi corporum doloribus congruentes.*

p. 89. If you will give me an opportunity of showing: *si per te mihi licitum fuerit indicare.*

p. 90. Any accident that may befall us: *res incommodæ.*

p. 91. To oblige any one: *de aliquo benè mereri.*

p. 95. To inflict on the polluted offspring, the punishments due to the crimes of the parents: *parentum pœnas à consceleratissimis filiis repetere.*

To take pains: *laborare; laborem in aliquid impendere.*

p. 96. To be invested with honorable offices: *summis honoribus fungi.*

p. 98. Words removed from common usage : *verba a communi usu abducta.*

Inelegantly coined by themselves : *a se inconcinne confictis.*

To steal Cicero's invectives against Catiline : *Ciceronis Catilinarias compilare.*

p. 102. The first object of moral beauty : *primus honesti locus.*

To hold the hand stretched out as a mark : *præbere pro scopulo dispansam manum.*

p. 103. Nature gives this instinct : *hoc à naturâ tributum.*

p. 104. To aspire to honor : *ad honorem contendere, tendere.*

A wise man fashions the conduct of his life according to the language of the ignorant : *sapientis vita ex insipientium sermone pendet.*

What regards the gratification of the senses : *quod spectat ad voluptatem.*

p. 106. To remove imaginary anxieties : *inanes solitudines detrahere.*

p. 108. Moderation in the exercise of supreme power : *in summâ potestate rerum omnium modus.*

To keep closely besieged : *clausum obsidere.*

p. 109. To instruct any one to the perpetration of the vilest practices : *aliquem mala facinora edocere.*

A supine indifference, by which the state was nearly brought to the brink of ruin : *socordia atque inertia per quas pænè respublica interiit.*

p. 110. To exhibit to the view the whole tissue of a man's vices and iniquities : *omnia nequitie hominis exempla proferre.*

This single trait retrieves his name from eternal disgrace : *hoc unum facinus labem æternam delet.*

p. 112. I will grant you your request : *efficiam quod rogas.*

Men of the first dignity and eminence : *homines nobilissimi.*

I claim the preference in rising to address you : *ego potissimum surgo.*

Reason receiving its whole support from itself, and continually making progressive advances : *ratio connixa per se, et progressa longius.*

From the general disorder which prevails through the whole world : *usque adedò ubique turbatur.*

p. 114. To have for an end, or to tend to : *spectare ad.*

116. Drawn by motives of duty : *aliquâ officii ratione adduceretur.*

p. 119. Intent upon the recovery of his rights : *ad libertatem erectus.*

p. 120. To expose to the manifest view of all : *proferre in medium.*

p. 121. To demand the payment of money : *exigere pecunias.*
In an engagement or pitched battle : *collatis signis.*

p. 123. What has a most extensive effect : *quod latissimè patet.*

Whose influence is felt : *quod plurimùm valet.*

Thus our ambition is gratified : *itâ quæ volumus consequimur.*

p. 125. There is this most fortunate circumstance attending it : *hoc adhuc percommodè cadit.*

The magisterial offices, with which I have been invested by the people : *quos mihi magistratus populus mandavit.*

p. 126. The religious obligation with which I bound myself to discharge those offices : *quâ omnium officiorum obstringor religione.*

The complexion of the times is such : *tempus est hujusmodi.*

p. 129. The manager of an impeachment : *actor causæ.*

Should we not make him feel the full weight of public vengeance ? *nonne publicè vindicaremus ?*

p. 134. It contributes to make them strong, and to render them of gigantic size : *vires alit, et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit.*

p. 137. Amicable alliances are founded on the basis of reciprocal wants : *amicitiæ propter indigentiam coluntur.*

p. 138. They are raised above every necessity of having recourse to the assistance of others : *minimè alterius indigent.*

They do not give a metrical or harmonious termination to their sentences : *non claudunt numeris sententias.*

I seem to have preferred my own private interest : *aliquam bonam gratiam mihi quæsisse videor.*

You ought to rest satisfied : *satis habeas.*

p. 139. I availed myself of the interest I had with your wife and sister to prevail upon them to deter him : *egi cum uxore tua, et cum vestrà sorore ut deterrent.*

His blind fury received no check or diminution : *neque furor minuebatur.*

He took up and conveyed all the money he could upon his

own credit, or that of his friend : *pecuniam suâ aut amicorum fide sumtam nutua. portare.*

p. 140. He left me no other alternative than to swear : *nihil, nisi ut jurarem, reliquit.*

p. 141. On the distant view of the navigation of a vessel : *cum procul cursum navigii videris.*

p. 142. More perniciously prodigal : *perditius prodigum.*

p. 143. He showed the most persecuting and vindictive spirit towards his person : *in ejus personam multa fecit asperius.*

p. 145. To harrass the mind with phantoms of imaginary evils : *animos fictorum malorum umbrâ defatigare.*

p. 146. It is unavoidable by me in that station to which I have been raised : *pro hoc gradu, in quo me P. R. collocavit, necessaria.*

p. 148. He acts the part of an implacable enemy towards me : *se mihi implacabilem præbet.*

To be saved from the gallows : *e furcâ redimi.*

149. I foresaw its pernicious tendency : *exitiosum fore videbam.*

Their cares attend us in our entrance into the world : *curis nos adolescentes prosequuntur.*

150. To pay one's debts : *nomina liberare.*

To break open the seal : *linum incidere.*

p. 151. They are inured to poverty and hardships : *paupertate usi adversus mala durati sunt.*

p. 157. To pry curiously into the lives of others : *aliorum vitas curiosius perscrutari.*

p. 159. a flow of genius : *flumen ingenii.*

p. 150. To drag forth before the tribunal of public justice from mere patriotic motives : *in judicium reipublicæ causâ vocare.*

A man stained with crimes of the blackest dye : *homo deterrimus.*

To admit to terms of peace : *in fidem recipere.*

p. 161. There has been an alarm : *ad arma conclamatum est.*

p. 162. This difference of opinion in our discussions being carried on till night : *hâc controversiâ, usque ad noctem ductâ.*

p. 166. It shows a want of friendship, and of that regard, which I have always felt for you, to observe a silence of indifference : *nostræ necessitudinis est, meæ in te benevolentiae, non tacere.*

By the ties of our mutual friendship : *pro amore nostro.*

p. 171. Nature has implanted that principle within us : *hoc naturâ est insitum.*

They have inflicted an awful punishment upon their mothers : *supplicium de matre sumserunt.*

Those persons are entitled to our just abhorrence : *justo odio dignissimi sunt.*

They take no precautions against the misfortunes and troubles which await them : *quos dolores et quas molestias excepturi sint non provident.*

p. 172. The oration is replete with charges of the most flagitious nature against him : *in oratione permulta in eum turpia ac flagitiosa dicuntur.*

To feel a thirst for glory, and passion for fame : *appetens gloriæ, atque avidus famæ.*

A stain contracted in the war : *macula bello suscepta.*

p. 173. An indelible blot on the reputation of the Roman people : *macula, quæ inveteravit in populi Romani nomine.*

p. 176. Men of the first celebrity for learning and wisdom : *homines doctissimos sapientissimosque.*

As to defy the ingenuity of any man to comprehend their order and connection : *ut vix quisquam arte ullâ ordinem rerum ac necessitudinem persequi possit.*

He was so far from observing the appearance of any heavenly objects : *nec solùm nullam ei oblatam cælestium speciem.*

p. 177. I have been induced by an intimacy of such long standing, and by that benevolence, which I have experienced from your youth : *amicitiæ nostræ vetustas, et tua summa ergà me benevolentia, quæ mihi jam à pueritiâ tuâ cognita est, me hortata est.*

p. 180. Continue in the enjoyment of that tranquility : *fruire isto otio.*

p. 184. They are so lost to every principle of virtue and religion : *eò iniquitatis at que impietatis pervenerunt.*

What can be a mark of greater folly, than in a mode of life which depends upon your will, to create an inability of continuing it : *quid stultius, quam, quod libenter facias, curare, ut id diutius facere non possis.*

p. 186. Their lives could be dispensed with : *tolerabilia fuerunt illa.*

The atrocious crimes which a man has been guilty of against the peace of society : *flagitiosissima ullius in rempublicam facinora.*

p. 187. The memory of which might have reflected lustre

on my humble name : *ex memoriâ quorum meum ignobile nomen innotescat.*

Never shall his measures disconcert : *nunquam ille me opprimit concilio.*

I know all his method of attack : *novi omnes hominis petitiones.*

Under the influence of these terrors : *in illo timore.*

He roused him from his diffidence : *diffidentem suis rebus, confirmavit.*

p. 188. With his hair nicely trimmed, and loaded with perfumes : *composito et delibuto capillo.*

Whence presuming on so well known an instance of their bravery they laid claim to : *quâ ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoriâ sumerent.....*

p. 189. Those who have the means as well as the power, feel a natural inclination to do their utmost towards : *ii qui valent opibus naturâ incitantur ad.....*

Without fixing the least suspicion : *sine suspicione.*

p. 190. How ignorant of the real interests of the people are those : *quàm malè ab iis reipublicæ consulitur.*

p. 191. It is to your good offices that I owe the happy termination of this business : *per te negotium ex sententiâ perfeci.*

To enter into the designs of any one : *idem sentire cum aliquo.*

p. 194. To be drowned amidst the shouts of armies : *obstrepi clamore militum.*

They are apt to entertain a suspicion of their being generally marked as objects of scorn and derision : *contemni se putant, despici, illudi.*

p. 195. But if he would retire and leave him in the undisturbed possession of his country : *quod si discessisset, ac liberam possessionem regionis sibi tradidisset.*

Misfortune has embittered every moment of my life : *omnia mihi tempora sunt misera.*

The hope of experiencing some amelioration of destiny : *spes alicujus commodi aliquandò recuperandi.*

p. 198. An opportunity of informing yourself first falls in your way : *primum tempus discendi nactus es.*

p. 201. Leaving it to your own conjectures to inform you : *ea vos conjecturâ perspicitis.*

I shall not expatiate on his great actions, with the unusual success that has attended them : *non sum prædicaturus quantas res, quantâque felicitate gesserit.*

INDEX

OF THE

CHIEF CONTENTS OF THIS BOOK.

- ABLATIVE* absolute, 62, 63.
All, 13.
Antequam, priusquam, &c. 90.
Atio, inquam, 105.
Adjectives, 145, 146, 223, 224.
Adverbs, 158, 224.
Affirmative 186.
Ago, 189.
Being, 55.
Clauses, arrangement of, 117, &c.
Conjunctions, or connexion of words and divisions of sentences, 127, &c.
Copiousness of Style, 169, &c.
Circumlocution, 179, &c.
Concinnitas, or equality of parts, 184, &c. and 216.
Circuit, of a period, 204, &c.
Contigit, evenit, &c. 188.
Confirmatio. Vide *Themes*.
Comparison. Vide *Themes*.
Dignity of Style, 196, &c.
Elegance, 1.
English, how to simplify it, in rendering it into Latin, 6, 7, 8.
Every, 16.
Epistolary Style, 75.
Examples. Vide *Themes*.
Fore ut, 48.
Figures of Rhetoric, 167, &c.
Fac eas, &c. 195.
Future perfect, 75, &c.
Gerunds, 67.
Genitives, 103.
Grecisms, 52.
Homo and Vir, 12.
Harmony, 215.
Idioms, 4, &c.
Intermixture of words to be avoided, 9.
Ille and iste, 12.
Ipse used for *totus*, 15.
Is for *talis*, 13.
Idem for *item*, &c. 15.
Instead of, 16, 17, 18, &c.
Id quod, 40.
Infinitive, 52, 85, &c.
Impersonal, 57, &c.
Intensive words, 32.
Ita, 125, &c.
Moneo, 48.
Motion, 71.
Mihi, tibi, &c. 193.
Measure, prose. Vid. *Harmony*, &c.
Nescio quis for quidam, 12.
Ne quidem, 88.
Neque, 133, &c.
Nisi, 140.
Non modò—sed etiam, 21, 158.

Negative, 132, &c. and 31.

Non is sum, qui, &c. 196.

One another, 16.

Opus est, 21.

Oportet, 26, 159.

Order, or arrangement of words,
87, 106, &c.

Other, 91, &c.

Persuadeo, 48.

Phrases, choice of, 2, 3, 4, 5.

Poetical endings, 10.

Primus, unus, &c. 22.

Participles, 60, &c. 159. &c.

Persons, 74.

Pronouns, 97 &c.

Prepositions, 104, 155. &c.

Pleonasm, 190, &c.

Period, structure of, 204, &c.

Perspicuity, 221, &c.

Proper names, 97.

Qui, quæ, quod, 28, &c. 122.

Quispiam, quisquam, &c. 13.

Qualis, &c. 38, 40, 122.

Quid, 50, &c.

Quid ? quod, 130.

Quod si, 141.

Quod ubi, quod utinam, 194.

Quo, eo, 153.

Quam ut, 51.

Quin, 52, 53.

Quasi, 54.

Quo minus, 58.

Quam, 90, &c. 125.

Quisque, 94.

Quidem, 99.

Quantus, 40, 124, 192.

Quot, 40, 124, 154.

Quoties, 40, 122, 38.

Quamdiu, 38, 125.

Quotations. Vide *Themes*.

Repetition, 178, 201,

Romans, phrases derived from *cūs*
toms of, 5, 222.

Ratio probans. Vide *Themes*.

Some, 16, 17, &c.

So far from, 20.

Sum, 25, 112

Sentences, 113, &c. &c.

Substantives, 145, &c. &c.

Superlatives, 149, &c.

Subjunctive, 29, &c. 47, &c.

Similes. Vide *Themes*.

Tenses, 73, &c.

Tenses, succession of, 78, &c. &c.
and 85.

Tum, tum, 131.

Tantum abest ut, ut, 21, 137.

Totus, 158.

Themes, 221, &c. &c.

Testimonies. Vide *Themes*.

Ut, 47, &c. &c.

Ubi, 126.

Ut ut, ubi, ubi, 192.

Verbs, 47, &c. 156, &c.

Vocatives, 111.

Variation of words, 144, &c.

Vero, 193.

Vereor, 44.

Without, 23, 24.

ERRATA.—Page 19, for *posum*—read *possum*.

31, for *orderit*—read *oderit*.

32, for *sum*—read *sum*.



RETURN TO → CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT
202 Main Library

RETURN TO → CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT
202 Main Library

2

3

5

6

6-month loans may be recharged by bringing books to Circulation Desk

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days prior to due date.

AUG 6 1978

REF. CIR.

JUL 7 '78

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA,

FORM NO. DD6, 40m, 3/78

BERKELEY, CA 94720

YA 00076

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C042922492

24903

760f

V212

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

